

LONGMANS'
LATIN COURSE
GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES
PART I.

NEW EDITION REVISED BY
J. W. BARTRAM, M.A.

NEW IMPRESSION

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO. LTD.
39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON, E.C. 4
NEW YORK, TORONTO
CALCUTTA, BOMBAY AND MADRAS
1937

PREFACE.

THE publication of this New Edition of *Longmans' Latin Course* was suggested by the appearance in 1930 of the new edition of Dr. B. H. Kennedy's *Revised Latin Primer*, prepared by Prof. J. F. Mountford now of The University of Liverpool, followed by a similarly revised edition of the *Shorter Latin Primer* in 1931. The *Latin Course* has long since established itself in wide use, but it was felt, in spite of its continued popularity, that the time had come to submit it to the same process of revision.

Accordingly, while the general plan and arrangement of the book and even, as far as possible, the numbering of the pages and paragraphs have been retained in order not to inconvenience teachers whose classes may be partly supplied with the old edition, a number of modifications have been made in the details.

The quantities of the vowels, for instance, in accordance with the best modern practice, are now marked on a uniform plan. All Long Vowels are marked with the sign — and all vowels not so marked are short. This involves the marking of all long vowels in closed syllables, including those that are now called "Hidden". The marking of the great majority of these "hidden" quantities presents no difficulty; in doubtful cases the consensus of scholars has been followed.

The wording of some of the rules and definitions has been modified for the sake of greater accuracy or lucidity.

In view of the fact that so much stress is laid on the quantities of all the vowels, it has been thought advisable to transfer the appendix on pronunciation from the end of the book to the beginning.

It is hoped that in its revised form *Longmans' Latin Course* will continue to do good service as a brief practical introduction to the ordinary accidence and syntax of the language combined with a sufficiency of exercises both ways.

J. W. B.

ANALYSIS OF CONTENTS.

PART I.

The References are to pages unless Rule (= R) is specified.

Pronunciation: Quantity: Syllables, p. ix.

NOUNS.	PAGE	ADJECTIVES.	PAGE
Cases and Inflection	1, 5	1st and 2nd Declension	
Direct and Indirect Object	1	Adjectives	16-17
Declension of Nouns :—		3rd Declension Adjectives	37-39
1st Declension	2	Comparison of Adjectives	47
2nd Declension	8, 9	The case used after	
3rd Declension	22-30	Comparatives	49
I-stems	33-35	Different meanings of	
4th Declension	43-44	Comparative and Superlative	49
2nd and 4th Declensions	44	Irregular comparison	51-2
5th Declension	45	Plus	51
Parasyllabic and Imparasyllabic Nouns	34	Translation of more and most	49
Rules for Declension	9	Adjectives used as Nouns	41
Common Gender	22 n.	Possessive Adjectives	57
		Translation of his, etc.	58-9
CASE		VERBS.	
Case after Esse	15, 19	Transitive and Intransitive	14
Ablative of Agent, etc.	29	Active and Passive	28, 106
Ablative in I	35	Copula	15
Ablative of Comparison	49	Regular Verbs :—	
Accusative in -im	34	1st Conjugation—	
Dative with Verbs	82, 111	Active	70
Partitive Genitive	56 n.	Passive	98

2nd Conjugation—	PAGE	PREPOSITIONS.	PAGE
Active	72	In	12
Passive	100	Ab, Ab	29
3rd Conjugation—		Ad	84
Active	74	Motion towards	12
Passive	102	Time and place	31
4th Conjugation—			
Active	76	CONJUNCTIONS.	
Passive	104	-que	78
sum	94	Si with future	80
dare	63 n.	Cum	114
Parts of Verbs	60		
Tenses—		MISCELLANEOUS.	
Perfect Tenses	62-3	Order of Words 3, 93, 97, 109	
Sequences of Tenses	66	Negation	10
Contractions	78	Verb Forms	117-119
Subjunctive Mood	65	Appendices—	
Imperative Mood	68	I. Irregularities of	
Participles	91, 107	Declension	120
Infinitive Mood	88-9	II. Gender—	
Impersonal Verbs	112	A. By meaning	121
		B. By ending	122
PRONOUNS.		III. Parsing	125
Personal	54, 55	Vocabularies to the	
Reflexive	55	Exercises	127
It and they	56	General Vocabulary—	
ADVERBS.		I. Latin-English	141
Expressions of time	31, 36	II. English-Latin	148

Words in Parentheses () are explanatory.

Words in Square Brackets [] are to be omitted.

PRONUNCIATION: QUANTITY: SYLLABLES.

1. The Latin Alphabet contained twenty-three letters :—

A B C D E F G H I K L M N O P Q R S T V X Y Z.

The sounds which make up the Latin language are divided into

(a) **Vowels**, which can be sounded alone.

(b) **Consonants**, which can only be sounded in conjunction with a vowel.

2. Pronunciation of Vowels.

The vowels were represented by the letters **a, e, i, o, u,** and **y.**

The letters **i** and **u** were *also* used to represent consonant sounds. Consonant **i** is pronounced like **y** in *yet*: consonant **u** is pronounced like English **w.**

In some books consonant **i** is represented by **j**, and consonant **u** is still generally represented by **v.**

3. Quantity of Vowels. Vowels are called 'long' or 'short.'

A long vowel takes approximately twice as long to pronounce as a short vowel. In this book all long vowels are indicated by the sign $\bar{}$: occasionally the sign \sim is used to mark a short vowel.

All Vowels not marked are short.

The following is approximately the pronunciation of the vowels :—

\bar{a} (prātum), as **a** in *fāther*.

\check{a} (răpit), the same sound shortened, as the first **a** in *aha*!

\bar{e} (mēta), as **ey** in *prey*, or French *été*.

\check{e} (frēta), as **e** in *fret*.

i (fidō), as *i* in machine.

i (plicō), as *i* in fit.

ō (nōtus), as *o* in note.

ō (nōta), as *o* in hot.

ū (tū), as *oo* in shoot.

ū (cūtis), as *oo* in took.

ŷ (Lydia, lŷra = Λυδία, λύρα), as French *u*.

Note.—Knowledge of quantities can only be gained by experience: but (a) a vowel is long (i) before *nf*, *ns*, e.g. infāns, (ii) as the result of contraction, nīl for nīhīl; (b) a vowel is short, (i) before *nt*, *nd*, e.g. amānt (except compounds like nōndum); (ii) before another vowel or *h*, e.g. mēus, trāhō.

4. Diphthongs. A diphthong (double sound) is formed by two vowels pronounced continuously. The Latin diphthongs are:

ae (portae) = $\overset{\frown}{a + e}$, nearly as *ai* in *aisle*.

au (aurum) = $\overset{\frown}{a + u}$, as *ou* in *house*, German *Haus*.

oe (poena) = $\overset{\frown}{o + e}$, as *oi* in *boil*.

eu (seu) = $\overset{\frown}{e + u}$, é-ōō pronounced in one breath.

ui (huic) = $\overset{\frown}{u + i}$, as French *oui*.

This last and the diphthongs *ei* (as *ei* in *rein*) and *eu* are rare.

The diphthongs are long.

H represents a rough breathing.

5. Pronunciation of Consonants. The pronunciation of the Latin consonants was much the same as that of the English, except that

b before *s* or *t* is pronounced as *p*; so *urbs*.

c always as in *cat*, never as in *cider*.

g always as in *get*, never as in *gentle*.

Consonant-*i* like *y* in *yet*; so *iūs*.

n before *c*, *g*, *qu*, like *ng* in *sing*.

r is always trilled or rolled.

s always as *ss* in *mass*, never as *s* in *was*.

t always as in *ten*, never as in *motion*.

Consonant-u (v) as *w* in *wall*.

x always as in *axe* (= ks), never as in *exact* (= gs).

z as *z* in *lazy* or as *dz* in *adze*.

Doubled Consonants were both pronounced ; so *cc*, like *kc* in *bookcase*.

The aspirates, *ch*, *th*, *ph*, found only in borrowed words, were pronounced :

ch like *kh* in *inkhorn*.

th like *th* in *hothouse*.

ph like *ph* in *taphouse*.

6. Division of Words into Syllables.

A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong either alone or with one or more consonants adjoining it : *e-ram*, *prā-vūs*.

A single consonant between two vowels belongs to the same syllable as the second vowel : *e-ram*, *e-rā-mus*.

If there are two or more consonants, the last consonant belongs to the second vowel : *mag-nus*.

The letters *c*, *g*, *t*, *d*, *p*, *b*, *f*, however, combined with the liquids *l*, *r* both go with the second vowel : *a-grum*, *trāns*.

The separate parts of compounds are kept distinct : *ab-rumpō*.

A syllable ending in a vowel is called an *open* syllable : a syllable ending with a consonant is called a *closed* syllable.

7. Length of Syllables.

A syllable is long—

1. If it ends with a long vowel or diphthong.

2. If it ends with two consonants or a double consonant (*x*).

3. If it ends with a single consonant, when the following syllable begins with a consonant. All other syllables are short.

A short vowel in a long syllable does not become "long by position" ; it remains short in pronunciation, though the syllable is long.

8. Accentuation.

Accent is the stress which is given to a syllable

nunciation. Thus in *fáther* the first syllable has the stress, in *retúrñ* the second syllable has the accent.

9. Rules for the accentuation of Latin words :

(a) In words of two syllables the first syllable is accented ;
e.g. *méa*, *tándem*.

(b) In words of more than two syllables the accent is given to the last syllable but one if that syllable is long ; e.g. *Rômáñī*, *eméndō*.

(c) In words of more than two syllables, when the last but one is short, the accent is given to the last syllable but two, e.g. *dóminus* ; *Rhódanus*.

The last syllable but one is called the **penultimate** or **penult** ; the last syllable but two is called the **antepenultimate** or **antepenult**.

In this book the sign - is used to indicate that a vowel is pronounced long, as in *mēnsa* ; it is not used to show the length of a syllable.

DECLENSION.

1. Latin nouns have different endings to show the relation in which they stand to other words in the sentence. Thus *mēnsa* means *table*, *mēnsae* means *of a table*, *mēnsārum*, *of tables*.

2. Inflected words, such as nouns, adjectives, pronouns or verbs, consist of a **Stem** and an **Inflexion**. Thus in *mēnsa*, *mēnsae*, *mēnsārum*, the stem is *mēnsā-*.

3. The different forms of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns obtained by altering the endings are called **cases**. There are six cases in Latin—Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, Ablative.

4. The **nominative case** is used when the noun is the subject of a verb.

To find the subject ask the question *Who?* or *what?* before the verb.

The boy runs. Who runs? The boy; therefore *boy* is the subject, and will be in the **nominative case**.

The wind blows. What blows? The wind; therefore *wind* is the subject in the **nominative case**.

5. The **vocative case** is used in addressing a person or thing.

O judge, be just. Judge is **vocative case**, because the judge is the person addressed.

6. The **accusative case** is used to express the **direct object**¹ of a transitive verb.

¹ In the sentence, *The king gives money to the girl*, the word *money* is said to be the **direct object** of the verb because it directly receives the action of the verb. But the girl is also *indirectly* concerned in the action, and girl is said to be the **indirect object**.

To find the object ask the question *Whom ?* or *What ?* after the verb.
The king praises the soldier. Praises whom ? The soldier ; therefore soldier is the direct object in the accusative case.

7. The **genitive case**¹ denotes the possessor. It corresponds to the possessive case in English, and also to a noun preceded by *of*.

The *boy's* dog, or the dog *of the boy*. Here *boy's* and *of a boy* show the possessor, and both words are in the genitive case.

8. The **dative case**¹ is used to denote the person *to whom* a thing is given or *for whom* a thing is done.

He gives a book *to the boy*. He makes a kite *for the boy*. Here *to the boy* and *for the boy* denote the indirect object, and they are in the dative case.

9. The **ablative case** has many uses. Its meaning is often expressed by the words *from*, *by*, *in* or *with*. It is often used to denote the **instrument** *by* which or *with* which anything is done.

He kills the bull *with a sword*. Here *with a sword* is in the ablative case.

10. There are five groups or declensions of nouns in Latin, distinguished from each other by the ending of the genitive singular, and by the final sound of the stem.

11. **First declension.** Stems in *-ā*. Singular number :--

Stem : *mēnsā-*.

Nom. <i>mēns-a</i> ²	<i>table</i> (subject).
Voc. <i>mēns-a</i>	<i>O table</i> .
Acc. <i>mēns-am</i>	<i>table</i> (object).
Gen. <i>mēns-ae</i>	<i>of a table</i> or <i>table's</i> .
Dat. <i>mēns-ae</i>	<i>to</i> or <i>for a table</i> .
Abl. <i>mēns-ā</i>	<i>by, with</i> or <i>from a table</i> .

¹ Other uses of this case will be shown later.

² Throughout this book the quantity is not marked in the case of a diphthong. Diphthongs are always long.

Rule 1.—The article is lacking in Latin. It has no words for *a, an* or *the* : *mēnsa* means *table* or *a table* or *the table*.

EXERCISE 1. Voc. 1, p. 127.

(1) Write out with English the singular of *casa* and *agricola*.

(2) *Vivā vōce*. Say the accusative case and meaning of the following nouns :—

nauta	agricola	insula	casa
rēgīna	aqua	terra	puella

(3) *Vivā vōce*. Say the Latin nominative and accusative of the following :—

the queen	water	the land	an island
a cottage	the farmer	a girl	the sailor

12. Before translating English into Latin or Latin into English it is necessary to find, by parsing, the case of each noun. Thus, *The sailor praises the cottage* : the verb is *praises*, and by asking the questions shown in §§ 4 and 6, pp. 1, 2, we find that *sailor* is subject and *cottage* the object or accusative case. We translate therefore :—

The sailor praises the cottage, *Nauta casam laudat*.

Rule 2. Order of Words.—In arranging the words in a Latin sentence put the verb last.

EXERCISE 2. Voc. 2, p. 127.

A. Find the subject and object and then translate into Latin :—

- (1) The queen praises the farmer.
- (2) The queen praises the sailor.
- (3) The sailor praises the water.
- (4) The farmer praises the land.
- (5) The queen loves the girl.
- (6) The sailor loves water.
- (7) The farmer loves the island.
- (8) The girl loves the queen.

12 (a). Before translating the following, first pick out the verb and then find from the *ending* of each noun which word is the subject and which the object.

B. Translate into English :—

- (1) Puella casam laudat.
- (2) Rēgina puellam laudat.
- (3) Nauta agricolam amat.
- (4) Nauta insulam laudat.
- (5) Puella nautam amat.
- (6) Rēgina terram laudat.
- (7) Rēgina nautam amat.
- (8) Puella agricolam laudat.

Rule 3.—The **genitive case** is often translated by *of* or *'s*.
The **dative case** is often translated by *to* or *for*.

The word in the **genitive case** is often placed before the word denoting the thing possessed :—

agricolae filia, the farmer's daughter.

EXERCISE 3. Voc. 3, p. 127.

Vivā vōce. Put into Latin :—

to the eagle	wisdom (acc.)	the sailor's
of the daughter	of the life	to the farmer
of the queen	to the daughter	of the cottage
of the rose	to the girl	arrow (<u>nom.</u>)

- A. (1) The sailor gives a spear to the farmer.
 (2) The queen praises the wing of the eagle.
 (3) The sailor praises the daughter of the queen.
 (4) The girl gives money to the farmer.
 (5) The farmer's daughter shows the way.
 (6) The sailor shows the way to the girl.
 (7) The girl gives a rose to the queen.
 (8) The queen's daughter praises the farmer's cottage.

- B. (1) Rēgina pecūniam puellae dat.
 (2) Nautae agricola rosam dat.
 (3) Nautae filia agricolam laudat.
 (4) Agricola aquilae ālam laudat.
 (5) Rēgina agricolae filiam laudat.
 (6) Puella viam rēginae mōnstrat.
 (7) Agricola rēginae aquam dat.
 (8) Nautae filia rēginam īnsulae laudat.

13. Singular and plural of mēnsa. Stem : mēnsā :—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom.	mēns-a <i>table</i>	mēns-ae	<i>tables</i>
Voc.	mēns-a <i>O table</i>	mēns-ae	<i>O tables</i>
Acc.	mēns-am <i>table</i>	mēns-ās	<i>tables</i>
Gen.	mēns-ae <i>of a table</i>	mēns-ārum	<i>of tables</i>
Dat.	mēns-ae <i>to or for a table</i>	mēns-is	<i>to or for tables</i>
Abl.	mēns-ā <i>by, with or from a table</i>	mēns-is	<i>by, with or from tables</i>

For irregularities of declension see Appendix I.

13 (a). Gender.—Nouns of the first declension are *feminine*, except names of men, e.g., *nauta, sailor*; *poēta, poet*.

EXERCISE 4.

- (1) Write out the plural of *rosa, nauta* and *hasta*.
 (2) *Vivā vōce*. Put into Latin :—

to sailors	girls (nom.)	farmers (acc.)
of islands	of girls	to queens
of roses	of daughters	of wings
cottages (acc.)	to a daughter	roses (acc.)

A. 1. The queen praises the roses. 2. The sailor gives money to the farmers. 3. The farmer shows the way to the sailors. 4. The sailor praises the farmer's cottage. 5. The

sailor praises the cottages of the farmers. 6. The farmer gives roses to the daughter of the sailor.

B. 1. Agricola aquam nautis dat. 2. Agricola viam puellis mōnstrat. 3. Rēgina aquilārum ālās laudat. 4. Puellārum sapientiam rēgina laudat. 5. Puella rēginae casās mōnstrat. 6. Filia, ō rēgina, nautārum hastās laudat.

14. SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

amat (he, she or it) loves	amant (they) love
laudat „ praises	laudant „ praise
dat „ gives	dant „ give
mōnstrat „ shows	mōnstrant, „ show
terret „ terrifies	terrent „ terrify
habet „ has	habent „ have

Rule 4.—The verb must agree with its subject in number and person.

The girl praises
The girls praise

Puella laudat
Puellae laudant

Rule 5.—By, with, from or in are often used to translate the ablative case.

EXERCISE 5.

Vivā vōce :—

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| (1) the daughter loves | the spear terrifies | water terrifies |
| the daughters love | the spears terrify | queens praise |
| the sailor praises | the girl has | sailors have |
| sailors praise | the girls have | girls show |
| (2) with spears | girls (acc.) | sailors (acc.) |
| with water | to girls | farmers (acc.) |
| by wisdom | of wings | of farmers |
| of eagles | to sailors | with islands |
| | | with wings |
| | | by the spear |
| | | O girls |
| | | of wisdom |

EXERCISE 6. Voc. 8, p. 127.

- (1) Decline, singular and plural, *spīna* and *silva*.

(2) *Vivā vōce* :—

to the inhabitant	by a crown	to girls
to the inhabitants	by crowns	girls (acc.)
of the wood	with thorns	with water
of the woods	life (acc.)	farmers'
O dove	thorns (acc.)	of islands
O doves	woods (nom.)	wisdom (acc.)

* * Before translating read over § 12 (a), p. 4, and remember that a singular verb has a singular subject and a plural verb a plural subject (R. 4, p. 6).

A. 1. *Aquila columbam terret.* 2. *Aquilae puellam terrent.* 3. *Rēgina puellam rosīs ōrnat.* 4. *Incolae aquam nautae dant.*¹ 5. *Incola insulae puellis columbās dat.* 6. *Rosārum spīnae rēginam terrent.* 7. *Aquila ālā columbam vulnerat.* 8. *Puellae casās rosīs ōrnant.* 9. *Puellae rosīs aquam dant.* 10. *Nautae hastam dat.*² 11. *Hastā nauta agricolam vulnerat.* 12. *Silvās nautae incolae mōnstrat.*

B. 1. The farmer praises the woods. 2. The farmers praise the islands. 3. The thorns wound the girl. 4. The eagles terrify the queen. 5. The sailors praise the inhabitants. 6. Girls love roses. 7. The inhabitants give a crown to the queen. 8. The girl praises the life of the sailor. 9. The girls give money to the sailors. 10. The sailor praises the cottages of the farmers. 11. The sailor wounds the eagle with a spear. 12. The girls adorn the queen with roses. 13. [They]³ give roses to the queen of the island. 14. To the inhabitants of the island the sailor gives money. 15. The roses wound the queen with [their]³ thorns. 16. The farmer shows the woods to the

¹ Translate in two ways.

² Since *dat* is singular the subject must be singular. *Hastam* cannot be the subject because it is in the accusative case, and if *nautae* were the subject the verb would be plural. The subject therefore is contained in the verb (see Ex. 6, B. 13, and Rule 30, p. 61), and is *he, she, they*, according to the sentence.

³ Words in square brackets [] are to be omitted.

sailor. 17. The farmers give water to the sailors. 18. The inhabitants of the island terrify the queen.

15. The second declension. Stems in -o.

The second declension consists of nouns whose nominative ends in -us, -er and -um, with the genitive in -i.

(1) Nouns in -us (masc.). Stem : domin-o

Nom.	domin-us	lord	domin-i	lords
Voc.	domin-e	O lord	domin-i	O lords
Acc.	domin-um	lord	domin-ōs	lords
Gen.	domin-i	of a lord	domin-ōrum	of lords
Dat.	domin-ō	to or for a lord	domin-is	to or for lords
Abl.	domin-ō	by, with or from a lord	domin-is	by, with or from lords

16. Special cases :—

(a) The vocative singular¹ of many proper nouns ending in -ius contracts -ie to -i, and the same rule applies to *filius*, son :—

Claudius (a Roman name)	Claudī, O Claudius
filius, son	filī, O son.

(b) The vocative of *Deus*, a God, is the same as the nominative : *Deus*, O God.

(2) (a) Nouns in -er (masc.). Stem : agr-o

Nom.	ager	field	agr-i	fields
Voc.	ager	O field	agr-i	O fields
Acc.	agr-um	field	agr-ōs	fields
Gen.	agr-i	of a field	agr-ōrum	of fields
Dat.	agr-ō	to or for a field	agr-is	to or for fields
Abl.	agr-ō	by, with or from a field	agr-is	by, with or from fields

NOTE.—Nouns declined like *ager* drop the *e* of the nominative in all cases except the vocative.

Most nouns in -er are declined like *ager*.

¹ The vocative of other words in -ius was either not used or was regular.

(2) (b) Nouns in -er like **puer** (masc.). Stem : **puero-**

Nom.	puer	<i>boy</i>	puer- i	<i>boys</i>
Voc.	puer	<i>O boy</i>	puer- i	<i>O boys</i>
Acc.	puer- um	<i>boy</i>	puer- ōs	<i>boys</i>
Gen.	puer- i	<i>of a boy</i>	puer- ōrum	<i>of boys</i>
Dat.	puer- ō	<i>to or for a boy</i>	puer- is	<i>to or for boys</i>
Abl.	puer- ō	<i>by, with or from a boy</i>	puer- is	<i>by, with or from boys</i>

17. In nouns of this class the **e** is part of the Stem. The chief nouns declined like **puer**, are :—

gener	gen.	generi	<i>son-in-law</i>
socer	„	soceri	<i>father-in-law</i>
vesper	„	vesperi	<i>evening</i>
liberi	„	liberōrum	<i>children</i>
• signifer	„	signiferi	<i>standard-bearer</i>

18. **Vir**, *a man*, is similarly declined :—

Sing.	vir,	ō vir,	virum,	virī,	virō,	virō
Plur.	virī,	ō virī,	virōs,	virōrum, ¹	virīs,	virīs

(3) Nouns in -um (neut.). Stem : **rēgno-**.

Nom.	Rēgn- um	<i>a kingdom</i>	Rēgn- a	<i>kingdoms</i>
Voc.	Rēgn- um	<i>O kingdom</i>	Rēgn- a	<i>O kingdoms</i>
Acc.	Rēgn- um	<i>a kingdom</i>	Rēgn- a	<i>kingdoms</i>
Gen.	Rēgn- i	<i>of a kingdom</i>	Rēgn- ōrum	<i>of kingdoms</i>
Dat.	Rēgn- ō	<i>to or for a king- dom</i>	Rēgn- is	<i>to or for king- doms</i>
Abl.	Rēgn- ō	<i>by, with or from a kingdom</i>	Rēgn- is	<i>by, with or from kingdoms</i>

19. Rules for the declension of nouns :—

(1) Except in nouns of the second declension in -us (like *dominus*), the vocative is always like the nominative.

(2) In neuter nouns the *nominative*, *vocative* and *accusative* are always the same in both singular and plural.

¹ Or *virum*.

(3) In neuter nouns the *nominative, vocative and accusative* plural always end in -a.

19 (a). Gender of second declension nouns.—Nouns in -us and -er are masculine; nouns in -um are neuter.

Exceptions.—(a) Colus, distaff, and humus, the ground, are feminine. *stick on which wool, flax etc. wound for spinning*
 (b) Pelagus, the sea, virus, poison, and vulgus, the common people, are neuter. *They have no plural.* *sometimes masc.*

Rule 6.—When an English verb is made negative it is often broken up into two words. *The farmer praises the land. The farmer does not praise the land.* In translating such sentences remember that the verb *does praise* is represented in Latin by one word. The sentence really means *the farmer praises not the land.*

Agricola terram nōn laudat.

EXERCISE 7.

Learn the declension of *dominus*, p. 8, and vocabulary, p. 128.

(1) Write out, singular and plural, the declension of *carrus*, *amicus* and *equus*.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

of the cart	of a village	to a lamb	by a bull
of the friend	village (acc.).	of a lamb	by the wind
to the friend	with a garden	of a wolf	wind (acc.)
friends (acc.)	garden (acc.)	of a bull	to a horse
horses (acc.)	of winds	wolves (nom.)	lambs (nom.)
of horses	of friends	to wolves	friends (nom.)
to friends	of bulls	by carts	villages (acc.)
by winds	bulls (acc.)	of carts	gardens (acc.)

- A. 1. Taurus agnōs vulnerat. 2. Amicus hortōs habet.
 3. Amicī taurus equum terret. 4. Ventī lupōs nōn terrent.
 5. Amicī carrōs laudat. 6. Nauta agnōs et equōs laudat.
 7. Puella aquam agnō dat. 8. Filia hortum dominō mōnstrat.
 9. Agnī lupōs nōn amant. 10. Agricola aquam tauris dat.

11. Dominus vicōrum equōs laudat. 12. Hortīs insulam agricolae ōrnant.

B. 1. The lord has carts and horses. 2. The wind terrifies the bull. 3. The wolf terrifies the lamb. 4. The wolves terrify the lambs. 5. The friend's horse wounds the bull. 6. The friends praise the lord's lambs. 7. [They] give a horse to the friend. 8. The lamb does not like the wolf. 9. The island, O friend, has villages. 10. The sailors terrify the bulls with a spear.

EXERCISE 8.

Learn §§ 15-16, p. 8.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *filius*, and plural only of *gladius* and *nūntius*.

(2) *Vivā vōce* :—

with a sword	of the gods	of the Roman	to Claudius
with swords	of the sons	of the son	messengers (acc.)
messenger (acc.)	to the messenger	O son	Gauls (nom.)
sons (nom.)	to the gods	O Claudius	of the Gauls

A. 1. Claudius corōnam filiō dat. 2. Gallī Rōmānōs nōn laudant. 3. Nūntiō gladium dominus dat. 4. Rōmānōrum nūntiī Gallōs terrent. 5. Claudius gladiōs et hastās nūntiīs dat. 6. Filiū nautae taurum gladiīs terrent. 7. Nūntiī hortōs domini laudant. 8. Ō fili, deus sapientiam Claudiō dat. 9. Domini filiū taurōs habent. 10. Rōmānī hortōrum deum rosīs ōrnant.

B. 1. The farmer gives a sword to [his] son. 2. The lord's sword terrifies the messengers. 3. The messenger of the Romans praises Claudius. 4. The son terrifies the messengers with a sword. 5. The friends of Claudius terrify the Gauls with swords. 6. The swords of the Romans terrify the Gauls. 7. O Claudius, [thy] messenger does not terrify the Gauls. 8. They give swords and horses to the messengers. 9. The gods,

O son, give wisdom to the Romans. 10. The friends of the Gauls wound the Romans with swords.

Rule 7.—The Latin preposition *in* means both *in* and *into*.

In meaning *in* is followed by the ablative.¹

In meaning *into* is followed by the accusative.¹

The farmer is *in* the field Agricola *in* agrō est

The farmer runs *into* the field Agricola *in* agrum currit

EXERCISE 9.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *culter*, *faber*.

(2) *Vivā vōce* :—

knife (acc.)	with knives	to a servant	of a book
books (acc.)	to a workman	servant (acc.)	with a book
of books	of a workman	wild boars (acc.)	to workmen
with a knife	of workmen	of fields	O workman
in a garden	in an island	into a cottage	in the village
into a garden	into an island	into the water	into the wood

A. 1. *In vicō sunt fabri.* 2. *Fabri filius agrōs laudat.*
 3. *Faber cultrum ministrō dat.* 4. *Fabrōrum librōs laudant.*²
 5. *Puella in casam currit.* 6. *Apri in silvam currunt.* 7. *Aper nunc in hortō est.* 8. *Minister fabrōs cultrō terret.* 9. *Domīnus agrōs ministrō dat.* 10. *Taurī in vicum currunt.*

B. 1. The workmen are in the field. 2. The servant gives a knife to the workman. 3. The servants terrify the workman with a knife. 4. The girl praises the books of the lord. 5. The workmen terrify the wild-boars with knives. 6. The wild-boars run into the wood. 7. The lord of the fields praises the workman. 8. The servant gives the knife to the son. 9. The sons of the workman run into the wood. 10. The table is in the cottage.

¹ Another way of putting this is: *In* meaning rest in a place takes the ablative; *in* meaning motion towards a place takes the accusative.

The pupil will notice later on that whenever a preposition implies motion towards, it requires the accusative.

² See note 2, p. 7.

EXERCISE 10.

Learn *puer* and §§ 17, 18, p. 9.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *socer*, and plural only of *liberī*.

(2) *Vivā vōce* :—

to the son-in-law	of children	children (acc.)
of the father-in-law	of the standard-bearer	son-in-law (acc.)
sons-in-law (acc.)	the fathers-in-law (acc.)	men (nom.)
to children	evening (acc.)	of sons-in-law
of men	books (nom.)	in a field
to men	children (acc.)	in fields
men (acc.)	to the standard-bearer	into the village
to a man	standard-bearers (acc.)	into the garden

A. 1. Virgenerum laudat. 2. Virī liberōs laudant. 3. Socer virum amat. 4. Signiferō pecūniam dant. 5. Virī liberōs socer amat. 6. Liberī virīs librōs dant. 7. Virō signifer hastam dat. 8. Liberōrum cultrōs laudant. 9. Signiferō vir hastam dat. 10. Signiferum hastā Galli terrent. 11. Virī in agrō sunt. 12. Virī in hortum socerī currunt. 13. Rōmānōrum signiferī sunt in vicō. 14. Ō fili, Rōmānī Gallōs terrent. 15. Virī aprōs cultris vulnerant. 16. Domini taurī in silvam currunt.

B. 1. The men give knives to the boys. 2. The son-in-law praises the standard-bearers. 3. The sons of the men run into the garden. 4. The children are now in the garden. 5. The boy wounds the lamb with a knife. 6. [He] gives a garden to the servant's son-in-law. 7. The owner (= lord) of the gardens has knives. 8. Boys do not praise books. 9. The father-in-law praises the standard-bearer. 10. The girls give roses to the son-in-law. 11. The sons of the man terrify the workmen with knives. 12. The children praise the men's books.

EXERCISE 11.

Learn *rēgnum*, p. 9, and § 19, p. 9.

(1) Write out *dōnum* and *praemium*, singular and plural.

(2) *Vivā vōce* :—

of gold	by danger	to temples	camp (acc.)
gifts	by dangers	in a temple	of shields
of gifts	rewards	in the town	by shields
towns	temples	in the camp	with gold

A. 1. Rōmānī scūta habent. 2. Oppidum hortōs habet.
 3. Agricola aurum templō dat. 4. Puer dominī dōna laudat.
 5. Praemia puerō dant. 6. Signifer hastam habet; dominus
 scūtum (habet). 7. Poētae in templō sunt. 8. Dominus
 puerum dōnīs dēlectat. 9. Rōmānī castra Gallōrum pōn lau-
 dant. 10. Virī sunt in castris Rōmānōrum. 11. Signifer in
 castra Rōmānōrum currit. 12. Perīcula viae puellam terrent.
 13. Puellae templa aurō ōrnant. 14. Sunt templa in oppidis.
 15. Galli signiferī arma laudant. 16. Scūta Rōmānōrum fab-
 rōs dēlectant.

B. 1. The lord gives silver to the boy. 2. The woman
 gives rewards to the boys. 3. The temples are in the town.
 4. The farmers praise the temples of the town. 5. The arms
 are in the camp. 6. The women give arms to the boys. 7.
 The poet's book praises the gifts of the lord. 8. The lord
 delights the servant with gold. 9. The children of the son-in-
 law run into the temple. 10. The towns have temples and
 gardens. 11. The island has towns and villages. 12. Gold
 delights men; roses [delight] children. 13. The farmer
 delights [his] daughter with gifts. 14. The girls adorn the
 temples with arms. 15. The standard-bearer gives [his] shield
 to the temple. 16. Arms, O son, terrify children.

20. (a) A transitive verb*denotes an action which passes over from
 the doer, i.e., the subject, to a direct object in the accusative case.

(b) An intransitive verb denotes an action which does not pass over
 from the doer to any other person or thing, i.e., it has no direct object.

Transitive: *The boy strikes the table.* Intransitive: *Birds fly.*

(c) In the sentence *Britain is an island*, the verb *is* simply couples or links the subject *Britain* and the complement *island*. As *island* completes the meaning of *Britain* by explaining what it is, it is often called the complement and the coupling verb *is* is called the copula. It is a copulative verb.

Nouns or pronouns coupled by *is*, *are*, etc., are always in the same case. The complement is in the same case as the subject.

Rule 8.—The noun standing after the verb *is* or *are* is put in the nominative case. See Rule 51, p. 96.

Britain is an island Britannia est insula

EXERCISE 12.

A. 1. Rhēnus est fluvius. 2. Claudius est rēginæ filius.
3. Neptūnus est deus pelagī. 4. Dōna causa laetitiae sunt.
5. Agnus est praeda lupōrum. 6. Hasta est dōnum dominī.
7. Bella sunt semper mala. 8. Dominī dōnum est corōna.
9. Germānia est patria poētārum. 10. Insulae sunt patria fabrōrum.
11. Saepe aurum est causa malōrum. 12. In silvīs sunt columbae et aquilae.
13. Dat scūta et hastās virīs. 14. Rōmānī nūntiōs habent.
15. Ō fili, sapientia est dōnum deōrum. 16. In Britannīā sunt fluvii et silvae.

B. 1. The land is an island. 2. The workmen are slaves.
3. The Rhine is a river of Germany. 4. Money is often the cause of joy.
5. Lambs are always the cause of joy to children. 6. Diana is the goddess of the woods.
7. Neptune is the god of rivers. 8. Gold is often the cause of anger. 9. The anger of the goddess terrifies the inhabitants of the land.
10. The lord of the slaves is a poet. 11. The island is the fatherland of poets.
12. The inhabitants of the islands are sailors. 13. The men are the messengers of the Romans. 14. War is always an evil to men.
15. Claudius is the messenger of the Gauls. 16. O Claudius, the gift of the lord is a sword.
17. The land has woods and rivers. 18. In the island are wolves and lambs.
19. The lambs run into the woods. 20. The wolves wound the lambs.
21. The lambs are the prey of the wolves.

A. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

21. Latin adjectives are declined just like Latin nouns, and they have different forms to show gender. Many adjectives end in **-us** for masculine, **-a** for feminine, **-um** for neuter. Thus the Latin for *good* is **bonus** (masc.), **bona** (fem.), **bonum** (neut.).

Masculines like *bonus* are declined like *dominus*, feminines like *bona* are declined like *mēnsa*, neuters like *bonum* are declined like *rēgnum*.

1. Bonus, bona, bonum, good.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. bon- us	bon- a	bon- um	bon- i	bon- ae	bon- a
Voc. bon- e	bon- a	bon- um	bon- i	bon- ae	bon- a
Acc. bon- um	bon- am	bon- um	bon- ōs	bon- ās	bon- a
Gen. bon- i	bon- ae	bon- i	bon- ōrum	bon- ārum	bon- ōrum
Dat. bon- ō	bon- ae	bon- ō	bon- is	bon- is	bon- is
Abl. bon- ō	bon- ā	bon- ō	bon- is	bon- is	bon- is

21 (a). Some other adjectives have the masculine in **-er**, feminine in **-a**, neuter in **-um**. Thus *black* = **niger** (masc.), **nigra** (fem.), **nigrum** (neut.).

The only difference between these adjectives and words like *bonus* is that the masculine *niger* is declined like *ager*.

2. Niger, nigra, nigrum, black.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. and V.	niger	nigr- a		nigr- ae	nigr- a
Acc.	nigr- um	nigr- am		nigr- ās	nigr- a
Gen.	nigr- i	nigr- ae		nigr- ārum	nigr- ōrum
Dat.	nigr- ō	nigr- ae		nigr- is	nigr- is
Abl.	nigr- ō	nigr- ā		nigr- is	nigr- is

21 (b). A few adjectives ending in *-er* keep the *e* throughout. The masculine of such adjectives is declined like *puer*.

3. **Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender.**

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. and V.	tener	tener-a	tener-um
Acc.	tener-um	tener-am	tener-um
Gen.	tener-i	tener-ae	tener-i
Dat.	tener-ō	tener-ae	tener-ō
Abl.	tener-ō	tener-ā	tener-ō

PLURAL.

N. and V.	tener-i	tener-ae	tener-a
Acc.	tener-ōs	tener-ās	tener-a
Gen.	tener-ōrum	tener-ārum	tener-ōrum
Dat.	tener-is	tener-is	tener-is
Abl.	tener-is	tener-is	tener-is

22. Most adjectives in *-er* are like *niger* and omit the *e*. The following are like *tener* and keep the *e* :—

Asper, aspera, asperum	<i>rough</i>
Liber, libera, liberum	<i>free</i>
Miser, misera, miserum	<i>wretched</i>
Prosper, prospera, prosperum	<i>prosperous</i>
frūgifer, frūgifera, frūgiferum	<i>fruit-bearing</i>

23. Examples of nouns and adjectives declined together :—

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>
Nom.	bonus dominus	Nom.	boni domini
Voc.	bone domine	Voc.	boni domini
Acc.	bonum dominum	Acc.	bonōs dominōs
Gen.	boni domini	Gen.	bonōrum dominōrum
Dat.	bonō dominō	Dat.	bonis dominis
Abl.	bonō dominō	Abl.	bonis dominis

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>	
Nom.	bona rēgina	Nom.	bonae rēginae
Voc.	bona rēgina	Voc.	bonae rēginae
Acc.	bonam rēginam	Acc.	bonās rēginās
Gen.	bonae rēginae	Gen.	bonārum rēginārum
Dat.	bonae rēginae	Dat.	bonis rēginis
Abl.	bonā rēginā	Abl.	bonis rēginis
<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	
Nom.	bonum rēgnum	Nom.	bona rēgna
Voc.	bonum rēgnum	Voc.	bona rēgna
Acc.	bonum rēgnum	Acc.	bona rēgna
Gen.	boni rēgni	Gen.	bonōrum rēgnōrum
Dat.	bonō rēgnō	Dat.	bonis rēgnīs
Abl.	bonō rēgnō	Abl.	bonis rēgnis

24. In declining together words like *famous poet* it must be remembered that, as *poëta* is masculine, we must write *clārus poëta*, *clārus* being declined like *bonus*, *poëta* like *mēnsa*, thus :—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	clārus poëta	clāri	poëtae
Voc.	clāre poëta	clāri	poëtae
Acc.	clārum poëtam	clārōs	poëtās
Gen.	clāri poëtae	clārōrum	poētārum
Dat.	clārō poëtae	clāris	poëtis
Abl.	clārō poëtā	clāris	poëtis

Rule 9.—The adjective agrees with its noun in number, gender and case. Thus *puellam bonam*, *dominō bonō*, *poëtā clārō*.

Rule 10.—The adjective in Latin is frequently placed after the noun.

A small cottage, Casa parva

EXERCISE 13.

Learn *bonus*, p. 16, and Vocab. 13, p. 129.

A. Give the nominative and accusative of :—

good queen	sharp spear	large kingdom	wild eagle
white rose	long spear	famous man	timid boy
white horse	large garden	famous kingdom	timid girl
little cottage	large cottage	wild horse	timid poet

B. Give nominative and genitive of :—

good boy	timid messenger	famous inhabitant	strong horse
good land	timid queen	famous god	strong work-
little boy	timid farmer	famous workman	man
little cottage	pleasing rose	pleasing gift	great danger
			great town

C. Give nominative and accusative of :—

famous queens	long spears	small villages	strong shields
famous sailors	long islands	small temples	strong towns
many books	long shields	small gifts	sharp swords
many dangers	long knives	small fields	sharp spears

EXERCISE 14.

Rule 11.—When we say *the island is small*, the adjective *small* tells what sort of island just as if we said *a small island*, and it must agree with *island* (§ 20 (c), p. 15).

The island is small, *Insula parva est*

The islands are small, *Insulae parvae sunt*

A. 1. *Hasta longa est.* 2. *Hastae Gallōrum longae sunt.*
3. *Poētae clarī sunt.* 4. *Equī validī sunt.* 5. *Rēgina bona est.*
6. *Lupī sunt ferī.* 7. *Templum est magnum.* 8. *Templa sunt magna.* 9. *Puerī sunt timidī.* 10. *Liberī Claudī timidī sunt.*

B. 1. The wall is high. 2. The slaves are timid. 3. The roses are white. 4. The sword is sharp. 5. The boy is timid. 6. The workman is timid. 7. The workmen are strong. 8. The dove is white. 9. The wings of the eagle are strong. 10. The knife of the workman is strong.

EXERCISE 15.

Decline in full *āla alba*, *ager lātus* and *templum longum*.

A. 1. Bona rēgina puerōs validōs laudat. 2. Agricola cultrum acūtum servō dat. 3. Servus templa puellae parvae mōnstrat. 4. Rosae albae puellis sunt grātae. 5. Nūntius puerōs timidōs terret. 6. Gallī nūntium Rōmānōrum terrent. 7. Puellae fēminam rosīs albīs dēlectant. 8. Servum acūtā hastā vir terret. 9. Multa templa sunt in insulā. 10. Insulae fluvīi sunt multī et longī. 11. Taurī ferī in agrum currunt. 12. Agricola multa dōna nūntiis dat.

B. 1. The farmer has many horses. 2. The girls adorn the cottage with white roses. 3. Roses have sharp thorns. 4. The shields of the famous Romans are long. 5. Many bulls terrify the little boy. 6. The great queen gives wide fields to the farmer. 7. The long island has large temples. 8. The famous town has many inhabitants. 9. They give shields and swords to the strong workman. 10. The Gauls terrify the Romans with [their] long spears. 11. The sons of the timid women run into the temple. 12. The island has broad rivers and many fields.

EXERCISE 16.

Learn *niger*, p. 16.

(1) Give nominative and accusative of :—

sick woman	thin lambs	red rose	sacred fields
sick boy	our garden	beautiful gardens	sacred temple
sick slave	our friends	beautiful temples	sacred garden
thin lamb	beautiful rose	beautiful temple	sacred island

(2) Put into Latin :—

with beautiful roses	of sick girls	of our island
to our friends	of black horses	of black eagles
to our friend	to black horses	of sacred temples
of the sick girl	our island (acc.)	sacred gifts (acc.)

A. 1. Puella spinās rubrae rosae timet. 2. Insula longa templa sacra habet. 3. Aagri agricolae lupōs macrōs timent.

4. In silvīs sunt templa nostrī Deī. 5. Macrī agnī incolās vici timent. 6. Agricolaē servī nigri sunt. 7. Puerōs parvōs nauta validus cultrō terret. 8. Rēgina nostra aurum templis sacris dat. 9. Filia tua, serve timide, spinās rosārum rubrārum timet. 10. Tauri vestri puellās pulchrās vulnerant.

B. 1. The red rose has many thorns. 2. Little boys fear sick wolves. 3. The black slave shows the temple to the beautiful queen. 4. The master (= lord) of the black slaves gives money to the temples. 5. Wolves always fear sharp knives. 6. The walls of the sacred gardens are high. 7. The little girl has a beautiful dove. 8. The woman gives a beautiful dove to the little girl. 9. Your swords terrify our children. 10. Red roses always have sharp thorns. 11. The girls adorn our queen with beautiful roses. 12. The timid inhabitant shows the way to the sick sailor.

EXERCISE 17.

Learn *tener*, p. 17, and §§ 22, 23, p. 17.

(1) Give nominative and accusative of :—

a tender boy	a free inhabitant	a rough way	a famous
tender boys	free inhabitants	a false friend	war
a wretched war	a prosperous town	beautiful roses	free sailors
wretched wars	prosperous towns	a tender queen	our plans
			great re-
			wards

(2) Put into Latin :—

to a prosperous town	to beautiful temples	of wretched women
O wretched slave	O wretched inhabit-	to a tender friend
of black horses	ants	with rough words
of a beautiful island	by famous wars	of the sick sailor
	to free workmen	

A. 1. Rēgina multōs librōs tenerae filiae dat. 2. Verba lupī avidī agnum tenerum terrent. 3. Bella prosperis oppidis nōn grāta sunt. 4. In pelagō sunt multae insulae. 5. Miseri incolae in silvam currunt. 6. Lupus tenerōs agnōs terret. 7. Nūntius Rōmānōrum incolis liberis gladiōs dat. 8. In

Britanniā sunt multae silvae. 9. Prosperi incolae insulae Deōs laudant. 10. Tua verba, parve fili, tenerum agnum terrent.

B. 1. The tender queen gives money to the wretched girls. 2. The little lambs fear the fierce (*asper*) wolf. 3. The farmers are inhabitants of a prosperous land. 4. Rough words terrify the tender minds of children. 5. The towns of Britain are famous. 6. The beautiful woods are sacred to our god. 7. The island has rough fields. 8. The plans of the wretched Gauls are known to the Romans. 9. The men of the island wound the sacred horses of the god with knives. 10. O wretched queen, the children fear [thy] angry words.

25. The third declension, *i.e.*, consonant or -i declension.

The third declension consists of nouns with stems ending in some consonant or in -i.

A. Consonant Stems (Gen. Plur. in -um).

(1) Nouns with stems ending in palatals, *i.e.*, c or g.

For gender see Appendix II.

dux (stem : duc-)	iūdex (stem : iūdic-)	rēx (stem rēg-)
leader (c). ¹	judge (c).	king (m.)

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	dux	iūdex	rēx
Acc.	duc-em	iūdic-em	rēg-em
Gen.	duc-is	iūdic-is	rēg-is
Dat.	duc-i	iūdic-i	rēg-i
Abl.	duc-e	iūdic-e	rēg-e

PLURAL.

N. and V.	duc-ēs	iūdic-ēs	rēg-ēs
Acc.	duc-ēs	iūdic-ēs	rēg-ēs
Gen.	duc-um	iūdic-um	rēg-um
Dat.	duc-ibus	iūdic-ibus	rēg-ibus
Abl.	duc-ibus	iūdic-ibus	rēg-ibus

¹ Some words can be applied to males or females. These are said to be of common gender. Such are *iūdex*, *canis*, *civis*, etc. In exercises, however, words of common gender should be made masculine, unless there is some special reason for making them feminine.

EXERCISE 18.

Vivā vōce :—

by peace	to the flock	by voices	a nut (acc.)
voices	of flocks	of light	of nuts
of voices	snow (acc.)	a flock (acc.)	with a nut
with light	peace (acc.)	by snow	voices (acc.)

white snow ¹	of a long peace	a small light (acc.)
of white snow	many nuts (acc.)	of timid judges
to the good king	many kings (acc.)	O strong leader
to the long peace	many voices (nom.)	of our leaders

A. 1. *Lūna nautīs lūcem dat.* 2. *Rōmānōrum lēgēs iūdicibus nōtae sunt.* 3. *Puer vōce iūdicis terrētur.* 4. *In agris nunc est nix.* 5. *Lūnae lūce nauta insulam videt.* 6. *Lēgēs sunt necessāriae ducibus et rēgibus.* 7. *Iūdicī bonae lēgēs iūcundae sunt.* 8. *Rōmānī pācem Gallīs dant.* 9. *Cūr rēgem clārum iūdex timet?* 10. *Pāx longa incolās insulae dēlectat.* 11. *Īra iūdicum captivīs perniciōsa est.* 12. *In castrīs sunt Rōmānōrum ducēs.* 13. *Puerī et puellae nucēs amant.* 14. *Vōce rēgis magnī servī miserī terrentur.*

B. 1. Wars are pleasant to leaders. 2. The leader's sword does not frighten the judge. 3. The girl fears the snow. 4. The voices of our leaders praise the long peace. 5. The king gives the booty to the leaders. 6. The captives are terrified by the voice of the leader. 7. Anger is destructive to peace. 8. The farmers praise the light of the moon. 9. The moon is sacred to Diana. 10. Why do judges praise good laws? 11. The kings of the Romans are famous. 12. The good boy is not terrified by laws.

(2) *Nouns with stems ending in dentals, i.e., teeth letters, d and t.*

For gender see Appendix II.

pēs (stem : ped-)	mīles (stem : milit-)	aetās (stem : aetāt-)
<i>foot</i> (m.)	<i>soldier</i> (m.)	<i>age</i> (f.)

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	pēs	mīles	aetās
Acc.	ped-em	milit-em	aetāt-em
Gen.	ped-is	milit-is	aetāt-is
Dat.	ped-i	milit-i	aetāt-i
Abl.	ped-e	milit-e	aetāt-e

PLURAL.

N. and V.	ped-ēs	milit-ēs	aetāt-ēs
Acc.	ped-ēs	milit-ēs	aetāt-ēs
Gen.	ped-um	milit-um	aetāt-um
Dat.	ped-ibus	milit-ibus	aetāt-ibus
Abl.	ped-ibus	milit-ibus	aetāt-ibus

(3) *Nouns with stems ending in labials, i.e., lip letters, b, p.*

For gender see Appendix II.

trabs (stem : trab-)	princeps (stem : princip-)	auceps (stem : aucup-)
<i>beam</i> (f.)	<i>chief</i> (c.)	<i>fowler</i> (c.)

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	trabs	princeps	auceps
Acc.	trab-em	princip-em	aucup-em
Gen.	trab-is	princip-is	aucup-is
Dat.	trab-i	princip-i	aucup-i
Abl.	trab-e	princip-e	aucup-e

PLURAL.

N. and V.	trab-ēs	princip-ēs	aucup-ēs
Acc.	trab-ēs	princip-ēs	aucup-ēs
Gen.	trab-um	princip-um	aucup-um
Dat.	trab-ibus	princip-ibus	aucup-ibus
Abl.	trab-ibus	princip-ibus	aucup-ibus

EXERCISE 19.

Vivā vōce :—

to the companion	horse-soldier (acc.)	of hostages
to the companions	foot-soldier (acc.)	to states
of the guardian	of praise	to foot-soldiers
of the guardians	the hostage (acc.)	by praise

to the famous chief	timid hostages (nom.)	of angry chiefs
the famous chief (acc.)	timid hostages (acc.)	the long winter
of a good companion	of a great state	(acc.)
of a long beam	of great states	to many companions
		of our chief

A. 1. Princeps equitem laudat. 2. Equitī rēx equum dat.
 3. Ducis vōx obsidem terret. 4. Civitātī dux multās lēgēs dat.
 5. Obsidum custōdēs sunt in silvā. 6. Validi equitēs hiemem¹ nōn timent.
 7. Magnā celeritātē peditēs in silvam currunt. 8. Principibus lēgēs sunt necessāriæ.
 9. Quis timidō militi laudem dat? 10. Princeps obsidēs in silvam mittit.
 11. Faber longās trabēs habet. 12. Peditēs custōdēs templi gladiō vulnerant.

B. 1. The hostages run into the temple. 2. Who praises the long winter¹? 3. Winter is not always pleasant to foot-soldiers.
 4. The voice of the hostage is not pleasant to the leaders. 5. To the guardian of the temple the chiefs give gold.
 6. The states have good laws. 7. The companions of the hostages fear the horse-soldier. 8. The winter terrifies the sick soldier.
 9. The horses wound the guardians with [their] feet. 10. The horse-soldiers send the hostages into the wood with great speed.
 11. The arms of the foot-soldiers are swords and shields. 12. The kings of the Gauls give hostages to the Romans.

¹ For the declension of *hiems* (fem.), *winter*, see p. 28.

LATIN COURSE.

Nouns with stems ending in liquids, l, r, and the fricative s.

For gender, see Appendix II.

cōnsul	victor	flōs
n : cōnsul-)	(stem : victōr-)	(stem : flōs- flōr-)
nsul (m.)	conqueror (m.)	flower (m.)

SINGULAR.

I V. cōnsul	victor	flōs
cōnsul-em	victōr-em	flōr-em
cōnsul-is	victōr-is	flōr-is
cōnsul-i	victōr-i	flōr-i
cōnsul-e	victōr-e	flōr-e

PLURAL.

V. cōnsul-ēs	victōr-ēs	flōr-ēs
cōnsul-ēs	victōr-ēs	flōr-ēs
cōnsul-um	victōr-um	flōr-um
cōnsul-ibus	victōr-ibus	flōr-ibus
cōnsul-ibus	victōr-ibus	flōr-ibus

(stem : māter- (tr-))	ānser (stem : ānser-)
mother (f.)	goose (m.)

SINGULAR.

N. and V. māter	ānser
Acc. mātr-em	ānser-em
Gen. mātr-is	ānser-is
Dat. mātr-i	ānser-i
Abl. mātr-e	ānser-e

PLURAL.

N. and V. mātr-ēs	ānser-ēs
Acc. mātr-ēs	ānser-ēs
Gen. mātr-um	ānser-um
Dat. mātr-ibus	ānser-ibus
Abl. mātr-ibus	ānser-ibus

EXERCISE 20.

Rule 12.—*There are boys in the garden* is merely another way of saying *Boys are in the garden*. In such expressions *there*¹ does not denote *place*, and it is omitted in Latin.

(*There*) *are boys in the garden*, **In hortō sunt pueri.**

Vivā vōce :—

of the sun	to the father	by labour	to trees
sun (acc.)	to the fathers	by the sun	by colours
colours	to Caesar	labours (acc.)	to the sun
of colours	Caesar (acc.)	of labours	of mothers

many flowers	of the red flower	a famous general
of many flowers	to the sick mother	beautiful colours
by a beautiful flower	of the good father	to thy sister
to the famous con-	many labours	with a great shout
queror		

A. 1. Cōsul victōrem laudat. 2. Victōrī rēx corōnam dat.
 3. Gallī Caesarem nōn amant. 4. Tunc Caesar in Galliā erat.
 5. Odor flōrum mātrem dēlectat. 6. In agrō sunt arborēs et flōrēs.
 7. Imperātor militum labōrēs laudat. 8. Nostrārum sorōrum hortus multōs flōrēs habet. 9. Puer flōrem sorōrī aegrae dat.
 10. Lūx sōlis patrem aegrum dēlectat. 11. In agrīs sunt ānserēs et equī.
 12. In Italiā sunt multa oppida. 13. Labōrēs puerōrum patribus iūcundī sunt.
 14. Māter clāmōre militum terrētur. 15. Gallī aurum et argentum Caesarī dant.

B. 1. There were many soldiers in Gaul. 2. To the father [he] gives flowers. 3. The shout of the victors is not pleasant to the captives. 4. Caesar was in Italy; Claudius [was] in Gaul. 5. The mother is terrified by the shouts of the leader. 6. The father praises the odour of the flowers. 7. Why does the chief praise the consul? 8. The consuls were in Italy

¹ Contrast *Cæsar lived there many years*, where *there* denotes place and would be translated in Latin.

then. 9. Cæsar's soldiers terrify the Gauls. 10. O Claudius, thy labour is great. 11. The farmer delights the sisters with trees and flowers. 12. The consul gives a long peace to the Gauls.

(5) *Nouns with stems ending in nasals, -n, -m.*

For gender see Appendix II.

leō (stem: leōn-) homō (stem: homin-) hiems² (stem: hiem-)
lion (m.) *man*¹ (m.) *winter* (f.)

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	leō	homō	hiems
Acc.	leōn-em	homin-em	hiem-em
Gen.	leōn-is	homin-is	hiem-is
Dat.	leōn-i	homin-i	hiem-i
Abl.	leōn-e	homin-e	hiem-ē

PLURAL.

N. and V.	leōn-ēs	homin-ēs	hiem-ēs
Acc.	leōn-ēs	homin-ēs	hiem-ēs
Gen.	leōn-um	homin-um	hiem-um
Dat.	leōn-ibus	homin-ibus	hiem-ibus
Abl.	leōn-ibus	homin-ibus	hiem-ibus

26. ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE

amat	<i>he loves</i>	amāt-ur	<i>he is loved</i> ³
amant	<i>they love</i>	amant-ur	<i>they are loved</i>
terret	<i>he terrifies</i>	terrēt-ur	<i>he is terrified</i>
terrent	<i>they terrify</i>	terrent-ur	<i>they are terrified</i>

From the above examples it will be seen that in simple tenses the 3rd person singular and plural of passive verbs is got from the active by adding -ur.

¹ Homō means a *human being*; vir means a *man* (as distinguished from a woman), a *hero*. "

² Hiems (stem, hiem-) is the only Latin stem in m.

³ When the pupil has learnt the complete passive voice (R. 55, p. 106) he will see that amātur means *he is being loved*, i.e., the action is represented as going on, not as completed.

In the sentence *The farmer is wounded by the soldier, by the soldier* denotes the *doer* of the action or agent, and it is in the ablative case.

Rule 13.—The ablative of the agent (*person*) requires the preposition *ā* or *ab*.¹

The ablative of the instrument (§ 9, p. 2) has no preposition.

Agent.² The farmer is wounded by the soldier

Agricola ā milite vulnerātur

Instrument. The farmer is wounded by³ a sword

Agricola gladiō vulnerātur

EXERCISE 21.

A. Put the following verbs into the passive voice, saying or writing the English :—

dat vulnerat dēlectat mittit videt laudat
dant vulnerant dēlectant mittunt vident laudant

B. Say which of the italicised phrases denote agent and which instrument ; then translate :—

1. The girl is praised *by [her] mother*.
2. The girls are praised *by the father*.
3. The island is praised *by the queen*.
4. The queen is delighted *by the flowers*.
5. The queen is delighted *by the horses*.
6. The soldier is sent *by Cæsar*.
7. The soldiers are sent *by the leader*.
8. The soldiers are delighted *by the booty*.
9. The boy is praised *by the farmer*.
10. The girl is terrified *by the eagle*.

EXERCISE 22.

A. 1. *Legiō ducem bonum habet*. 2. *Caesar multās legiōnēs habet*. 3. *Scipiō legiōnis ducem laudat*. 4. *Dux*

¹ *Ā* is used before a consonant (including consonant -i, and -u (v)); *ab* before a vowel or *h*: *ā rēge*, by the king; *ab amicō*, by a friend; *ab hostibus*, by the enemy. It will be seen later that *ab* has other meanings. For the present, however, it will only mean *by*, denoting the agent.

² It should be noted that the agent must be a living person or animal.

³ The instrument is expressed in English by *by* or *with*. These words do not appear in the Latin.

legiōnum nunc mortuus est. 5. Virgini pater flōrēs dat. 6. Virgō a rēginā laudātur. 7. Virginēs templum flōribus ōnant. 8. Virginum māter a rēge laudātur. 9. Virgō parva ā leōne terrētur. 10. Templum flōribus ā virginibus ōnātur. 11. Cōnsuli Rōmāni duās¹ legiōnēs dant. 12. Labor legiōnum Scipiōni iucundus est. 13. Leōnēs mulierēs terrent.

B. 1. Cæsar sends a legion into Gaul. 2. The victor praises the labours of the legions. 3. Diana praises the gifts of the maidens. 4. There are many lions in Africa. 5. The maidens are terrified by the lions. 6. The legions are sent into Gaul by Cæsar. 7. Scipio is victor; Claudius is dead. 8. To the legions the victor gives great praise. 9. To the victor a crown is given. 10. Money is given to the sailor by the leader. 11. Cæsar sends the legions into Italy. 12. The tender lamb is terrified by the savage lion.

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

NOTE.—Recapitulate Rule 19, pp. 9-10.

nōmen ²	opus	corpus	caput
(stem: nōmin-)	(stem: oper-)	(stem: corpor-)	(stem: capit)
a name (n).	a work (n).	body (n).	head (n).

SINGULAR.

N., V., A.	nōmen	opus	corpus	caput
Gen.	nōmin-is	oper-is	corpor-is	capit-is
Dat.	nōmin-i	oper-i	corpor-i	capit-i
Abl.	nōmin-e	oper-e	corpor-e	capit-e

PLURAL.

N., V., A.	nōmin-a	oper-a	corpor-a	capit-a
Gen.	nōmin-um	oper-um	corpor-um	capit-um
Dat.	nōmin-ibus	oper-ibus	corpor-ibus	capit-ibus
Abl.	nōmin-ibus	oper-ibus	corpor-ibus	capit-ibus

¹ *Duās* is the feminine plural accusative of *duo*, two.

² For gender see Appendix II.

Rule 14 (a).—Time when is expressed by the ablative *without preposition*.

In winter the sailor fears **Hieme** nauta tempestātēs
storms timet

Similarly aestāte *in summer*
 nocte *by (or at) night*

CAUTION.—Remember that when *in* denotes place it cannot be omitted in Latin: *in agrō*, *in the field*; but when it refers to time it must be omitted: *aestāte*, *in summer*.

EXERCISE 23.

(1) Give the nominative and genitive plural of :—

carmen	sīdus	aestās	lītus	historia
genus	stēlla	fulmen	mūrus	mīles
vulnus	tempus	corpus	caput	opus

(2) Give the Latin for :—

many wounds	by lightning	with songs
of a constellation	of many kinds	a beautiful song
of stars	at night	a beautiful star
of the shores	by a wound	of a beautiful shore

A. 1. Nōmina militum duci nōta sunt. 2. Annī tempora sunt varia. 3. In sīdere sunt multae stēllae. 4. Fulmen virginem terret. 5. Sīdus viam nautis nocte mōnstrat. 6. In librō sunt multa genera carminum. 7. Mīra sunt opera Dei. 8. Temporibus antiquis (R. 14, p. 31) in insulā multae silvae erant. 9. Quis hiemis frīgus nōn timet? 10. Insula alta litora habet. 11. Aestāte hortī multōs flōrēs habent. 12. In (= on) litore sunt multī nautae.

B. 1. The poet's songs delight the woman. 2. Boys are sometimes terrified by lightning. 3. In summer the farmer gives flowers to the king. 4. In winter girls do not like snow. 5. The story of old times delights soldiers. 6. The names of the constellations are known to the poet. 7. The island has

high shores. 8. Wounds are the cause of honour to soldiers. 9. In ancient times the daughters of kings were shepherds. 10. On (say *in*) the shore are many cottages. 11. Poets praise ancient times. 12. By the light of the moon the sailor sees the shore. 13. The captive is wounded by the hostage.

27. Examples of third declension nouns declined with adjectives of the first and second declension :—

		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
		<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	
Nom.		dux	clārus	ducēs	clāri
Voc.		dux	clāre	ducēs	clāri
Acc.		ducem	clārum	ducēs	clārōs
Gen.		ducis	clāri	ducum	clārōrum
Dat.		duci	clārō	ducibus	clārīs
Abl.		duce	clārō	ducibus	clārīs
		<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>	
N. and V.	<i>lēx</i>	iūsta	lēgēs	iūstae	
Acc.	<i>lēgem</i>	iūstam	lēgēs	iūstās	
Gen.	<i>lēgis</i>	iūstae	lēgum	iūstārum	
Dat.	<i>lēgi</i>	iūstae	lēgibus	iūstis	
Abl.	<i>lēge</i>	iūstā	lēgibus	iūstis	
		<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	
N. and V.	<i>magnum</i>	opus	magna	opera	
Acc.	<i>magnum</i>	opus	magna	opera	
Gen.	<i>magni</i>	operis	magnōrum	operum	
Dat.	<i>magnō</i>	operi	magnis	operibus	
Abl.	<i>magnō</i>	opere	magnis	operibus	

EXERCISE 24.

(1) Decline, singular and plural: *vōx grāta*, *obses aeger*, *clāmor magnus*, *virgō stulta*, *līrus altum*, sing. only, *pāx longa*.

Decline in plural only: *multī flōrēs*, *multa genera*, *varia sīdera*, *antīqua tempora*, *multae legiōnēs*, *nostrae sorōrēs*.

B. Stems in -i (Gen. Plur. in -ium).

For gender see Appendix II.

28. The point to be noticed is that nouns with -i stems have -ium in the genitive plural, sometimes -ī in the ablative singular, and in the case of neuter nouns -ia in the nominative plural.

A. MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

hostis	nūbēs	urbs	imber
(stem : hosti-)	(stem : nubi-)	(stem : urbi-)	(stem imbri-)
enemy (c.)	cloud (f.)	city (f.)	shower (m.)

SINGULAR.

N. and V.	hostis	nūbēs	urbs	imber
Acc.	hostem	nūbem	urbem	imbrem
Gen.	hostis	nūbis	urbis	imbris
Dat.	hostī	nūbī	urbī	imbri
Abl.	hoste	nūbe	urbe	imbre, -ī

PLURAL.

N. and V.	hostēs	nūbēs	urbēs	imbrēs
Acc.	hostēs, -is	nūbēs, -is	urbēs, -is	imbrēs, -is
Gen.	hostium	nūbium	urbium	imbrium
Dat.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	imbribus
Abl.	hostibus	nūbibus	urbibus	imbribus

B. NEUTER.

mare, the sea	animal, animal	calcar, spur
(stem : mari-)	(stem : animāli-)	(stem : calcāri-)

SINGULAR.

N., V., A.	mare	animāl	calcar
Gen.	maris	animālis	calcāris
Dat.	mari	animālī	calcāri
Abl.	mari	animālī	calcāri

PLURAL.

N., V., A.	maria	animālia	calcāria
Gen.	marum ¹	animālīum	calcārium
Dat.	maribus	animālībus	calcāribus
Abl.	maribus	animālībus	calcāribus

29. There are four classes of stems in **-i** :—

(1) Stems with **nom. sing. in -is**, and in **-er** from stems in **-ri-**, not increasing¹ in the **gen. sing.** : with **gen. plur. in -ium**² ; *e.g.*, **hostis, civis, imber, ūter**.

Two exceptions to this rule are :—

canis (c)	dog	gen. plur. canum
iuvenis (c)	young person	gen. plur. iuvenum

(2) Stems with **nom. sing. in -ēs**, *e.g.*, **nūbēs**.

(3) Stems which have two consonants before the **-i**.

These generally drop **i** before the **s** in the **nom. sing.**, *e.g.*, **mōns** (stem : **monti-**), *mountain* ; **urbs** (stem : **urbi**), *city* ; **dēns** (stem : **denti**), *tooth*.

(4) Neuter stems in **-i**.

The **nom. sing.** ends in **-e, -al, -ar**.

The **i** of the stem is changed to **e**, or dropped, *e.g.*, **mare**, *sea* ; **animal**, *animal* ; **calcar**, *spur*.

30. Notes on **-i** stems.

Some stems in **-i** have the **accusative singular** in **-im**, the **ablative singular** in **-i**, and occasionally the **nominative and accusative plural** in **-is**.

(1) The **accusative -im** is always found in names of rivers and towns, *e.g.*, **Tiberis**, the Tiber, **Neāpolis**, Naples, and in the nouns **sitis** (*fem.*), *thirst*, **tussis** (*fem.*), *cough*, and **vis** (*fem.*), *force*.

¹ When the genitive singular has more syllables than the nominative, as in **dux, duc-is**, the noun is said to increase in the genitive. When the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables, as in **hostis, hostis** ; **imber, imbris**, the noun is spoken of as not increasing in the genitive.

Nouns which do not increase are sometimes called **Parisyllabic** (*i.e.*, equal-syllabled) ; those which increase are called **Imparisyllabic**.

² The only common parisyllabic words which do not follow this rule are **pater, māter, frāter, canis, iuvenis** and **senex**, all having **-um** in the genitive plural.

The following sometimes have **-im** : *febris* (fem.), *fever* ; *turris* (fem.), *tower* ; *secūris* (fem.), *axe* ; *puppis* (fem.), *stern* ; *nāvis* (fem.), *ship*, and a few others.

(2) The **ablative** in **i-** is always found in those words which have the **accusative** in **-im**, and sometimes in the following : *avis* (fem.), *bird* ; *imber* (masc.), *shower* ; *nāvis* (fem.), *ship* ; *turris* (fem.), *tower*, and usually in *ignis* (masc.), *fire*.

EXERCISE 25.

(1) Give nominative and genitive plural of :—

auris	mēnsis	testis	canis
cīvis	vulpēs	arx	turris
ignis	nox	avis	mōns

(2) Put into Latin :—

to the citizen	ears (acc.)	by the mountain
of the citadel	of witnesses	of the towers
at night	the fox (acc.)	of the teeth
of the fires	the mountain	the citizen (acc.)

A. 1. Civibus frūmentum Caesar dat. 2. Cīvium vōcēs vulpem terrent. 3. Oppidum multās turrēs habet. 4. Avēs virginem dēlectant. 5. Nocte militēs in arce sunt. 6. Montium nōmina puerō nōta sunt. 7. Cīvēs testem laudant. 8. Testium vōcēs captivum terrent. 9. In arce est turris alta. 10. Cīvēs timidi in arcem currunt. 11. Portae arcium validae sunt. 12. Ā cīvibus verba testis laudantur. 13. Dentibus canum vulpēs terretur.

B. 1. There are many kinds of foxes. 2. The Romans were the enemies of the Gauls. 3. In the town are many towers. 4. The timid citizen fears the strong dog. 5. The voices of the birds delight the ears of the citizens. 6. The soldiers are preparing (≠ parant) a fire. 7. In winter the nights are long. 8. The heads of dogs are not large. 9. The names of the months are known to the girl. 10. The leader

sees the gates of the citadel. 11. The teeth of the foxes terrify the dog. 12. The witness is terrified by the voice of the citizen.

Rule 14 (b).—Time when is expressed by the ablative without preposition.

Time how long is expressed by the accusative without preposition.

In winter the sailor fears	Hieme nauta tempestātēs
storms.	timet.

For¹ many years he lived in Italy. Multōs annōs in Italiā vixit.

EXERCISE 26.

(1) Decline, singular and plural, *nox frīgida*, *tūrris alta* ; in the plural only, *multī mēnsēs*, *parva animālia*.

(2) of the sea	a troublesome tax	to the strong hunter
by a tax	many animals (acc.)	in the sea
of spurs	with strong nets	the nets of the
in the first year	of sharp teeth	hunter
in the first month	of small foxes	of high towers
		with a strong spur

A. 1. Vēnātor rētia magna parat. 2. In mari sunt multae nāvēs. 3. Maria litora habent, fluvii ripās (habent). 4. Vēctigālīa civi molesta sunt. 5. Nōnnūlla animālīa multōs annōs vivunt. 6. Primō annō in Germāniā erat. 7. Marum litora alta nāvibus periculōsa sunt. 8. Multa genera animālīum sunt in silvā. 9. Primō mēnse annī nivēs cīvibus saepe molestae sunt. 10. Capita nōnnūllōrum animālīum parva sunt. 11. In rete piscātōris sunt multī piscēs. 12. Hiemis noctēs frigidāe vēnātōri molestae sunt.

B. 1. Some foxes are white. 2. At night the hunters prepare nets in the wood. 3. The king gives strong spurs to

¹ When *for* or *during* refers to length of time it is omitted in Latin.

the horseman. 4. [There] are various kinds of animals. 5. Some animals have small ears. 6. Some birds do (R. 6, p. 10) not live many months. 7. The animals of the seas are the booty of the fisherman. 8. Neptune is the god of the seas. 9. In the sea are many fishes. 10. On (= *in*) the shore of the sea are many cottages. 11. The sharp teeth of animals are destructive to the nets. 12. For many hours the queen is delighted by the birds.

31. B. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Most adjectives of the third declension fall under three classes :—

I. Adjectives of three terminations (rare) :—

Masc. *acer*, Fem. *ācris*, Neut. *ācre*, *keen*.

II. Adjectives of two terminations :—

Masc. and Fem. *fortis*, Neut. *forte*, *brave*.

III. Adjectives of one termination :—

Masc., Fem. and Neut. *fēlix*, *happy*;

Masc., Fem. and Neut. *prūdēns*, *prudent*.

All these adjectives have stems in *-i*. They have therefore :—

1. *-i* in the ablative singular.
2. *-ium* in the genitive plural.
3. *-ia* in the neuter plural.

(1) *Ācer, ācris, ācre, keen*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. and V.	<i>acer</i>	<i>ācr-is</i>	<i>•ācr-e</i>	<i>ācr-ēs</i>	<i>ācr-ēs</i>	<i>ācr-ia</i>
Acc.	<i>ācr-em</i>	<i>ācr-em</i>	<i>ācr-e</i>	<i>ācr-ēs, -is</i>	<i>ācr-ēs, -is</i>	<i>ācr-ia</i>
Gen.	<i>ācr-is</i>	<i>ācr-is</i>	<i>•ācr-is</i>	<i>ācr-ium</i>	<i>ācr-ium</i>	<i>ācr-ium</i>
Dat.	<i>ācr-i</i>	<i>ācr-i</i>	<i>ācr-i</i>	<i>ācr-ibus</i>	<i>ācr-ibus</i>	<i>ācr-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>ācr-i</i>	<i>ācr-i</i>	<i>ācr-i</i>	<i>ācr-ibus</i>	<i>ācr-ibus</i>	<i>ācr-ibus</i>

32. There are only eleven adjectives declined like *acer*, of which the following are the chief :—

<i>alacer,</i>	<i>alacris,</i>	<i>alacre,</i>	<i>brisk</i>
<i>equester,</i>	<i>equestris,</i>	<i>equestre,</i>	<i>equestrian</i>
<i>pedester,</i>	<i>pedestris,</i>	<i>pedestre,</i>	<i>pedestrian</i>
<i>salūber,</i>	<i>salūbris,</i>	<i>salūbre,</i>	<i>healthy</i>
<i>celer,¹</i>	<i>celeris,</i>	<i>celere,</i>	<i>swift</i>

(2) *Fortis, forte, brave.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. and V.	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-e</i>	<i>fort-ēs</i>	<i>fort-ia</i>
Acc.	<i>fort-em</i>	<i>fort-e</i>	<i>fort-ēs, -is</i>	<i>fort-ia</i>
Gen.	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-is</i>	<i>fort-ium</i>	<i>fort-ium</i>
Dat.	<i>fort-i</i>	<i>fort-i</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>fort-i</i>	<i>fort-i</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>	<i>fort-ibus</i>

(3) *Fēlix, happy.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. and V.	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlic-ēs</i>	<i>fēlic-ia</i>
Acc.	<i>fēlic-em</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlic-ēs</i>	<i>fēlic-ia</i>
Gen.	<i>fēlic-is</i>	<i>fēlic-is</i>	<i>fēlic-ium</i>	<i>fēlic-ium</i>
Dat.	<i>fēlic-i</i>	<i>fēlic-i</i>	<i>fēlic-ibus</i>	<i>fēlic-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>fēlic-i</i>	<i>fēlic-i</i>	<i>fēlic-ibus</i>	<i>fēlic-ibus</i>

33. NOTE.—Many words of this class end in *-us*,² e.g., *prūdēns* (gen. *prūdētis*), *prudent*. They are declined exactly like *fēlix*. Thus the masculine and feminine would be :—

singular, *prūdēns, prūdēt-em, prūdēt-is, prūdēt-i, prūdēt-i*;
plural, *prūdēt-ēs, prūdēt-ēs, prūdēt-ium, prūdēt-ibus, prūdēt-ibus.*

¹ The word *celerēs*, meaning the body-guard of the kings of ancient Rome, takes *-um* in the gen. plur. The adjective *celer* also has the gen. plur. in *-um*; but notice that *celer* retains the *e* in declension, because the stem itself ends in *eri-*.

² Many words of this class are present participles. They take *-e* in the ablative singular in certain constructions to be explained later. Used as adjectives pure and simple, however, they take *-i*.

34. There is also a group of adjectives of the third declension with consonant stems, which have the ablative in *-e*, the genitive plural in *-um*, and the neuter plural in *-a*. Most of these are comparatives like—Masc. and Fem. *fortior*, Neut. *fortius*, *braver*. (See § 39, p. 47.)

Fortior, fortius, braver.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

M. and F. Neut.

M. and F. Neut.

N. and V.	<i>fortior</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōr-ēs</i>	<i>fortiōr-a</i>
Acc.	<i>fortiōr-em</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortiōr-ēs</i>	<i>fortiōr-a</i>
Gen.	<i>fortiōr-is</i>	<i>fortiōr-is</i>	<i>fortiōr-um</i>	<i>fortiōr-um</i>
Dat.	<i>fortiōr-i</i>	<i>fortiōr-i</i>	<i>fortiōr-ibus</i>	<i>fortiōr-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>fortiōr-e</i>	<i>fortiōr-e</i>	<i>fortiōr-ibus</i>	<i>fortiōr-ibus</i>

34 (a). In addition to comparatives there are a few third declension adjectives of one termination¹ with the ablative in *-e*, the genitive plural in *-um* and the neuter plural in *-a*. The commonest words of this class are :—

<i>Dives</i> ¹	gen.	<i>divitis</i>	<i>rich</i>
<i>Pauper</i> ¹	„	<i>pauperis</i>	<i>poor</i>
<i>Supplex</i> ¹	„	<i>supplicis</i>	<i>suppliant</i>
<i>Vetus</i>	„	<i>veteris</i>	<i>old</i>

Dives,² *rich*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

M and F. Neut.

M. and F. Neut.

N. and V.	<i>dives</i>	<i>dives</i>	<i>divit-ēs</i>	<i>diti-a</i>
Acc.	<i>divit-em</i>	<i>dives</i>	<i>divit-ēs</i>	<i>diti-a</i>
Gen.	<i>divit-is</i>	<i>divit-is</i>	<i>divit-um</i>	<i>diti-um</i>
Dat.	<i>divit-i</i>	<i>divit-i</i>	<i>divit-ibus</i>	<i>divit-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>divit-e</i>	<i>divit-e</i>	<i>divit-ibus</i>	<i>divit-ibus</i>

¹ Most words of this class can be used as nouns : *dives*, a rich man. *Memor*, gen. *memoris*, *mindful*, has the ablative singular in *-i*, and the genitive plural in *-um*.

² *Dives* has also contracted forms : nom. *dis* ; acc. *ditem* ; gen. *dītis* ; dat. and abl. *dīti*, and in plur. *dītēs* (m.f.), *dītia* (n.) *dītium*, *dītibus*.

EXERCISE 27.

Learn §§ 31-33, pp. 37-38.

(1) Write out (singular and plural) *celer equus*, *vita salūbris*, and (plural only) *equestre proelium*.

(2) Give the nominative and accusative, singular and plural of :—

ācris pugna	sagitta celeris	cibus salūber
ācre bellum	hasta celeris	regiō salūbris
ācer equus	equus celer	vīta salūbris

(3) Put into Latin :—

by a keen war	of equestrian battles	in a healthy region
of a swift arrow	of keen wars	by a keen leader
of swift arrows	of swift horses	of keen leaders
equestrian battles	of a healthy life	of swift ships

EXERCISE 28.

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *gladius brevis*, *aqua dulcis*; (singular only) *dux tristis*; (plural only) *exemplum ūtile*.

(2) Give the nominative and genitive singular of :—

a short life	a useful plan	a faithful hostage
sweet wine	a useful law	a brave boy
a fertile field	a faithful slave	a cruel war
a fertile region	a disgraceful death	a short war
a cruel master	a faithful dog.	a sad war

(3) Put into Latin :—

to a faithful friend	of useful laws
of a cruel war	all the cities
a sad mother (acc.)	of all the cities
of a fertile region	all the dangers
the faithful leaders	of all the dangers
useful laws	all wars

EXERCISE 29.

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *audāx nauta*, *audāx cōnsiliū*; and (plural only) *amicus absēns*.

(2) Give the nominative and genitive of :—

a bold word	wise men	a wise mother
a prudent mother	a wise plan	a wise father
a powerful leader	bold boys	a happy life
the present time	bold plans	a happy king

(3) Put into Latin :—

by bold plans	of an absent mother	the present time
of wise men	to a wise man	with bold words
a powerful king (acc.)	by a bold king	with wise words
to powerful kings	present times	of a powerful queen

Rule 15.—(a) Some adjectives are used as substantives to express persons or things.

<i>sapiēns</i>	<i>a wise man</i>	<i>sapientēs</i>	<i>wise (men)</i>	<i>omnia</i>	<i>all things</i>
<i>boni</i>	<i>the good</i>	<i>nostrī</i> ¹	<i>our (men)</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>goods</i>

NOTE.—In English this is only possible in the plural. In *The rich are not always happy*, *rich* means *rich people*, and is plural.

(b) Neuter adjectives are used for abstract substantives :

<i>vērū</i> or <i>vēra</i>	<i>the truth.</i>
----------------------------	-------------------

EXERCISE 30. Vocs. 27-29.

Recapitulate §§ 31-33, pp. 37, 38.

A. 1. *Militēs ducem audācem amant.* 2. *Rēgēs insulārum potentēs sunt.* 3. *Īra rēgum potentium cīvibus molesta est.* 4. *Omnēs (R. 15, p. 41) tempora antiqua nōn laudant.* 5. *Omnia puerum tristem terrent.* 6. *Exempla sapientium mātum puellis sunt ūtilia.* 7. *Malā praesentium temporum rēgi nōta sunt.* 8. *Bonī nōn semper felīcēs sunt.* 9. *Perōcī*

¹ *Nostrī* is the plural of the adjective *noctēr* (Vocab. 16, p. 130).

leōnī vēnātor agnum dat. 10. Rōmānī gladiōs brevēs habent.
11. Caesar nostrōs in Galliam mittit. 12. Gallia solum fertile habet.

B. 1. Many [men] praise the brave hunter. 2. The wise are always happy. 3. All [things] are useful to the wise. 4. Our [men] praise the faithful hostage. 5. Our [men] are praised by (R. 13, p. 29) the powerful leader. 6. The swift ships have bold sailors. 7. He gives sweet wine to the keen leader. 8. Who does not fear a disgraceful death? 9. A cruel war is not useful to citizens. 10. Wars are always cruel.

C. 1. The keen horse is wounded by the swift spear. 2. The Gauls give fresh (= sweet) water to our [men]. 3. In that (= *eā*) fight our-men were in sad dangers. 4. Britain is the fatherland of bold sailors. 5. The life of the brave is often short. 6. The words of absent friends are useful to friends. 7. The little girl is frightened by the swift horse. 8. In Africa are fierce lions. 9. The citizen does not praise the healthy life of the farmer. 10. Base examples are not troublesome to the prudent.

EXERCISE 31.

Learn §§ 34-34 (a), p. 39.

(1) a shorter night	in a more fertile field
of a shorter night	more fertile gardens
shorter swords	a more useful plan
with shorter swords	by a more useful plan
a shorter song	more useful plans
shorter songs	of more useful plans
a more fertile field	more powerful kings
	of more powerful kings
	an easier work
	of an easier work
	a more powerful kingdom
	shorter spears
	more useful arms

(2) rich kings	to poor soldiers	to an old soldier
of rich kings	a rich temple	old soldiers
to a rich queen	in a rich temple	of old soldiers
poor soldiers	an old soldier	old wine

EXERCISE 32. Vocs. 27-31, pp. 132, 133.

A. 1. Rēx dīves fertilēs insulās habet. 2. Dīvitēs nōn semper pauperēs laudant. 3. Rōmānī gladiōs breviōrēs quam¹ Gallī habent. 4. Aestāte noctēs sunt breviōrēs quam hieme. 5. Fortibus omnia perīcula sunt levia. 6. Puella vōcem dulciōrem quam puer habet. 7. Ferrum ūtilius quam argentum est. 8. In eā (= *that*) pugnā equitēs ūtiliōrēs erant quam peditēs. 9. Bonī pecūniam pauperibus saepe dant. 10. Miles vetus multa vulnera habet.

B. 1. The wounds of the old soldier are not light.² 2. To a rich*[man] all things are easy. 3. The light² of the sun is more useful than [the light] of the moon. 4. Bold plans are more useful than imprudent words. 5. To the poor girl many [things] are given by the rich queen. 6. In summer the nights are short. 7. To the old soldier the leader gives a reward. 8. The shield is shorter than the spear (R. 17, p. 49). 9. Soldiers are not braver than sailors. 10. Arrows are more useful to the hunter than spears.

35. The fourth declension. Stems in -u.

The fourth declension consists of masculine and feminine nouns ending in -us and neuters in -ū. The genitive singular is -ūs, genitive plural -uum.

For gender see Appendix II.

gradus (stem : gradu-), *step* (m.) **cornū** (stem : cornu-), *horn* (n.)

N. and V.	grad-us	grad-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
Acc.	grad-um	grad-ūs	corn-ū	corn-ua
Gen.	grad-ūs	grad-uum	corn-ūs	corn-uum
Dat.	grad-ui	grad-ibus	corn-ū	corn-ibus
Abl.	grad-ū	grad-ibus	corn-ū	corn-ibus

¹ *Quam* is a conjunction of comparison used like *than* in English. Things compared by *quam* must be in the same case. Use the nominative at present; but see Rule 18 on p. 49.

² What part of speech is this word? See Voc. 31, p. 133.

36. NOTES.—(1) The dative singular -nī is sometimes contracted to -ū, e.g., *gradū*, *cornū*.

(2) The original form of the dative and ablative plural in -ubus is sometimes found instead of -ibus. For instance :—

(a) Words *always* taking -ubus.

acus	(fem.)	needle	dative and ablative plural,	acubus
arcus	(masc.)	bow	"	" arcubus
partus	(masc.)	offspring	"	" partubus
tribus	(fem.)	tribe	"	" tribubus

(b) Words *usually* taking -ubus.

artūs	(masc. pl.)	limbs	"	" artubus
lacus	(masc.)	lake	"	" lacubus

(c) portus (masc.) harbour " " portubus
or portibus

(3) Some nouns have both u- and o- stems, especially names of trees: *laurus*, bay; *myrtus*, myrtle; e.g., *ficus* (fem.), a fig tree, is declined throughout like the second or fourth declension, except that in the dat. sing. and the gen., dat., and abl. plural it is always of the second declension.

EXERCISE 33.

Learn §§ 35-36.

A. 1. Arcūs multōs vērātōr habet. 2. Acus est acūta. 3. Acus acūta manū vulnerat. 4. Agricolaē manū dūrae sūt. 5. Genua equī dūra sūt. 6. Exercitū in Galliam Caesar dūcit. 7. Cōsulēs ducēs exercitū erant. 8. Exercitū magnō Gallōs superat. 9. Currūs Gallōrum Rōmānis perniciosi erant. 10. In portū sūt multae nāvēs. 11. Adventus Rōmānōrum causa fugae erat. 12. Britannia multōs portūs habet.

B. 1. The farmer gives a bow to the hunter. 2. The hunters have plenty of bows. 3. Sharp needles are useful to women. 4. The Gauls lead [their] army into Italy. 5. The slave fears the arrival of the lord. 6. The leader of the army is the consul (R. 8, p. 15). 7. The attack of the Romans terrifies the Gauls. 8. The bull wounds the hunter with [his] horn. 9. The chariots of the consul are in the field. 10. In the harbours of Britain are many ships.

EXERCISE 34.

§§ 35-36, pp. 43, 44.

A. 1. Hostium equitatus Rōmānōrum exercitum superat. 2. Exercituum ducēs ex¹ curribus pugnant. 3. Quercūs Britanniae omnibus nōtae sunt. 4. Galli impetum in (= on) equitatum Rōmānōrum faciunt. 5. Adventus Hannibalis causa metūs Rōmānis erat. 6. Hannibal exercitum trāns Alpēs in Ītaliā dūcit. 7. Trānsitus Alpium Hannibali nōn facilis erat. 8. In Alpibus sunt multī lacūs. 9. Adventus equitatus victōriam Hannibali dat. 10. Ex equis victor pugnat. 11. In cōspectū exercituum ducēs pugnant. 12. Puella fructū arboris altae dēlectātur. 13. In Britannīa currūs incolārum militēs Rōmānōs terrent.

B. 1. He leads the cavalry over the Alps. 2. The cavalry makes an attack on (= in with acc.) the Gauls. 3. The fruit of oaks is useful to animals. 4. Across the river are the Germans. 5. The crossing of the Alps was difficult to all generals. 6. The Gauls fight on horseback (= horses). 7. The inhabitants of Britain fight in chariots. 8. In the harbours of Britain are many sailors. 9. Cæsar leads [his] army across the mountains. 10. The enemy (*plural*) has no (*say not*) cavalry. 11. Hannibal's victories were the cause of fear to the citizens. 12. In sight of the Alps Hannibal overcomes the Roman cavalry,

37. The fifth declension. Stems in -ē.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in -ēs, with genitive in -eī.

rēs (stem rē-), *thing* (f.) diēs (stem. diē-), *day*, (m.)

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. and V.	r-ēs	r-ēs		di-ēs	li-ēs
Acc.	r-em	r-ēs		di-em	di-ēs
Gen.	r-eī	r-ērum		di-eī	di-ērum
Dat.	r-eī	r-ēbūs		di-eī	di-ēbus
Abl.	r-ē	r-ēbus		di-ē	di-ēbus

¹ Literally out of, from. Say *in*. An Englishman thinks of *where* the fighter is and says *in*; the Romans think of *where* the fighting comes from and say *out of* or *from*.

38. NOTES.—(1) A contracted form of the genitive and dative singular in -ē, for ēi is found in Virgil and Horace.

(2) *Diēs* and *rēs* are the only nouns of the fifth declension which are declined throughout in singular and plural. Most of the others have no plural, though the nominative and accusative plural are found in a few words, e.g., *aciēs*, *faciēs*, *spēs*, etc.

(3) Gender of fifth declension: *Diēs*¹ and *meridiēs* (*mid-day*) are masculine: all others are feminine.

(4) The meaning of *rēs* is always a trouble to beginners. It means thing or things in the sense of circumstances or affairs.

EXERCISE 35.

1. Write out (singular only), *aciēs*, *spēs* and *rēspública*.

2. by hope	of the face	of adversity
hope (acc.)	face (acc.)	in adversity
in the line of battle	prosperity (acc.)	in the plain
to the commonwealth	in prosperity	on the first day

A. 1. *Hōrae diēi aestāte iūcundae sunt.* 2. *Multōs diēs in nostrā urbe mānsit* (*he remained*). 3. *Victōria exercitūs civēs spē complet.* 4. *Bonae lēgēs reipūblicae ūtiliōrēs sunt quam altī mūrī.* 5. *In aciē hostium sunt servī.* 6. *In dextrō cornū aciēi erant equitēs.* 7. *Spēs praedae militem dēlectat.* 8. *Initia multārum rērum sunt parva.* 9. *In rēbus secundis hominēs multōs amicōs habent.* 10. *Primō diē Caesar exercitum in Galliam mittit.*

B. 1. The hour of mid-day is often the hour of a meal (= food). 2. The girl delights [her] friends by [her] beautiful face. 3. Our camp is (*say are*) in the plain. 4. The leader sees the line-of-battle of the enemy. 5. Men are delighted by prosperity. 6. In adversity wretched [men] have not always friends. 7. The victory gives a new hope to the common-

¹ *Diēs* is always masculine in the plural. *Diēs* in singular is feminine when it means a fixed, appointed time, and also in poetry. Pupils, however, should always make it masculine until they have acquired greater experience.

wealth. 8. The king is the lord of all things. 9. The long line [of the army] terrifies the enemy (plural). 10. Fear is the enemy of hope.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison :—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
dūr-us, <i>hard</i>	dūr-ior, <i>harder</i>	dūr-issimus, <i>hardest</i>

39. In Latin the **comparative** is formed from the positive by adding **-ior (-ius)** to the last consonant of the stem. Thus

dūrus (stem, dūr-o-) comparative dūr-ior.

The **superlative** is generally formed by adding **-issimus. (-a, -um)** to the last consonant of the stem.

Thus :—

dūrus (stem, dūr-o-), superlative dūr-issimus.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
clārus	clār-o-	clār-ior	clār-issimus
<i>famous</i>		<i>more famous</i>	<i>most famous</i>
fortis	fort-i-	fort-ior	fort-issimus
<i>brave</i>		<i>braver</i>	<i>bravest</i>
audāx	audāc-i-	audāc-ior	audāc-issimus
<i>bold</i>		<i>bolder</i>	<i>boldest</i>
prūdēns	prūdēt-i-	prūdēt-ior	prūdēt-issimus
<i>prudent</i>		<i>more prudent</i>	<i>most prudent</i>

40. **Special cases.**—All adjectives with stems in **-ro, -ri** form the superlative by doubling the last consonant of the stem and adding **-imus**. Words like *niger* have *e* before *r* in the superlative.

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Stem.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
pulcher <i>beautiful</i>	pulchr-o-	pulchr-ior	pulcher-rimus
asper <i>rough</i>	āspēr-o-	asper-ior	asper-rimus
ācer <i>keen</i>	ācr-i-	ācr-ior	ācer-rimus
celer <i>swift</i>	celer-i-	celer-ior	celer-rimus

41. Six adjectives with stems in *-ili* are regular in the comparative, but form the superlative by doubling the last consonant of the stem and adding *-imus*.

<i>Stem.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
facil-i-	<i>easy</i>	facil-ior	facil-limus
difficil-i-	<i>difficult</i>	difficil-ior	difficil-limus
simil-i-	<i>like</i>	simil-ior	simil-limus
dissimil-i-	<i>unlike</i>	dissimil-ior	dissimil-limus
gracil-i-	<i>thin</i>	gracil-ior	gracil-limus
humil-i-	<i>low</i>	humil-ior	humil-limus

41 (a). All other adjectives in *-ilis* are regular, e.g.,

nōbil-is	<i>noble</i>	nōbil-ior	nōbil-issimus
----------	--------------	-----------	---------------

Rule 16.—All comparatives are declined, as consonant stems, like *fortior* (masc. and fem.), *fortius* (neut.), p. 39 ; all superlatives like *bonus*, *-a, -um*.

EXERCISE 36.

§§ 39-41, pp. 47, 48.

A. Give the comparative and superlative of :—

grātus	altus	brevis	audāx
longus	molestus	crūdēlis	ferōx
validus	aeger	dulcis	potēns
lātus	pulcher	fidēlis	sapiēns

B. Give nominative and accusative singular of :—

a long day	a short garment	a beautiful garden
a longer day	a shorter garment	a more beautiful garden
the longest day	the shortest garment	the most beautiful garden
a broad river	a bold plan	a powerful leader
a broader river	a bolder plan	a more powerful leader
the broadest river	the boldest plan	the most powerful leader

Rule 17.—In comparing one thing with another, the conjunction *quam* is used in the same way as *than* in English. Things compared by *quam* must be in the same case. This can be easily shown if we complete the sentence. Thus *The earth is larger than the moon* means *The earth is larger than the moon (is)*, from which we see that *moon* is nominative to *is* (understood).

Rule 18.—When the noun after *quam* is either nominative or accusative *quam* is more often than not omitted, and the noun put in the ablative.¹

The sailor is stronger than the soldier	Nauta milite validior est rather than Nauta validior est quam miles
--	---

With every other case *quam* must be used.

Rule 19.—When *more* ² and *most* ² are used with adjectives they merely indicate the comparative and superlative degrees, and are not translated (as a rule ³) by a separate word, *e.g.*, *more beautiful* = *pulchrior*.

EXERCISE 37.

Vivā rōce :—

a most faithful ally	to a dearer companion	to a most keen man
a keener weapon	higher towers	the highest mountains
stronger soldiers	of a denser wood	happier times
safer peace	a most difficult work	swifter ships

A. 1. Equi celeriores quam canes sunt. 2. Sapientissimus Rōmānōrum erat Scipiō. 3. Rhēnus est lātiōr Rhodanō. 4. Columba hominibus grātiōr quam aquila est. 5. Pāx tūtiōr est bellō. 6. Sociōrum potentissimi erant Belgae. 7. Oppidum turrem altissimam (R. 20 (b), p. 50) habet. 8. Quis est

¹ This ablative is called the ablative of comparison.

² When these words are used with nouns, *e.g.*, *more men*, they denote quantity and are translated by *plūs*, etc. (R. 22, p. 53).

³ See § 47, p. 52.

âcrior quam audâx nauta ? 9. Quid tristius bellō est ? 10. Hannibal exercitum âcriorem habet quam Scipiō.

B. 1. Who is more powerful than our consul ? 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. Sometimes a slave is more faithful than [his] master. 4. The highest tower is in the citadel. 5. War is the saddest of evils. 6. The work is more difficult to the boy than to the girl. 7. The Belgians were keener than the Gauls. 8. The victories of Cæsar were easier in Gaul than in Britain. 9. O most wise judge, grant pardon (= *dā veniam*) to the most wretched captive. 10. What is more useful to a soldier than a very keen weapon ?

Rule 20.—Comparatives and superlatives can be translated in several ways :—

- (a) *Fortior* means *braver* or *rather brave* or *too brave*.
- (b) *Fortissimus* means *bravest* or *very brave*.

Rule 21.—Latin uses the superlative much more freely than the English. Thus *The brave leader was killed* could be translated *The very brave leader*, etc.

EXERCISE 38.

A. 1. Galli sociōs fidēlissimōs habēbant. 2. Dux militibus quam equitibus cārior est. 3. Quid difficilior est quam trānsitus Alpiū ? 4. Omnium Gallōrum ferōcissimī sunt Belgæ. 5. Memoria temporum fēliciōrum senī iūcundissima erat. 6. Rhēnus longissimus (R. 20 (b), p. 50) et lātissimus est. 7. Omnium âcerrimus erat Hannibal. 8. Multī divitēs sunt miserrimī. 9. In Hannibale erat âcerrimus amor patriæ. 10. Trānsitus Alpiū difficillimus est.

B. 1. The mountains of the island are very high. 2. Our [men] have rather-short swords. 3. The journey is more difficult in winter than in summer. 4. The Alps are the highest mountains of Europe. 5. Journeys are easiest in

summer. 6. By patience men overcome most difficult [things]. 7. Of all animals lions are fiercest. 8. The inhabitants of Britain had wider ships than the Romans. 9. To the Romans the Germans were most troublesome. 10. The ancient towns of the Germans had rather high towers. 11. Who praises wretched (R. 21, p. 50) fortune ?

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.¹

Positive.		Comparative.		Superlative.	
bonus	good	melior	better	optimus ²	best
malus	bad	peior ³	worse	pessimus ²	worst
magnus	great	maior ³	greater	maximus	greatest
parvus	small	minor	less	minimus	least
{ multum	much	plūs	more	plūrimum	most
{ multi	many	plūrēs	more	plūrimi	most
vetus	old	vetustior	older	veterrimus	oldest
nēquam ⁴	worthless	nēquior	more worthless	nēquissimus	most worthless

43. NOTES.—(1) *Multum* is the neuter of *multus*. Its use is explained in R. 22, p. 53.

(2) In the singular *plūs* is only used as a noun in the neuter; see R. 22, p. 53. In the plural it is an adjective, and is thus declined:—

SINGULAR (Noun).		PLURAL (Adjective).	
	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. and A.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	—	plūribus	plūribus
Abl.	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

¹ Some comparatives and superlatives are formed from stems distinct from that of the positive.

² Remember R. 20 (b), p. 50. *Maximus* especially very often means *very great*; *plūrimum*, *very much*; *optimus*, *very good*, etc.

³ Notice that the neuter singular of all comparatives is got by changing -or into -us.

⁴ This word is indeclinable.

44. Comparative.		Superlative.	
senior	older	nātū maximus	oldest
iūnior	younger	nātū minimus	youngest
ulterior	further	ultimus	furthest or last
inferior	lower	infimus or imus	lowest
interior	inner	intimus	inmost
exterior	outer	extrēmus	outermost or last
propior	nearer	proximus	nearest or next
posterior	later	postrēmus	last
prior	former	primus	first
superior	upper	suprēmus or summus	highest

45. NOTES.—(1) The adjectives *senex*, *old*, and *iuvenis*, *young* (often used as substantives) are the positives of *senior* and *iūnior*. The other comparatives correspond to adverbs or prepositions from the same stem: *ultrā*, *infrā*, *intrā*, *extrā*, *prope*, *suprā*, though the positive adjectives *inferus*, *exterus*, *posterus* and *superus* are sometimes found.

(2) In *nātū maximus*, etc., *nātū* is the ablative of a noun meaning *by birth*. Thus *nātū maximus* means *greatest by birth*, i.e., *oldest*. In declining, *nātū* remains unaltered. Thus *nātū maxima*, *nātū maximū*.

(3) *Nātū maior* can be used for *senior*, and *nātū minor* for *iūnior*.

46. Words ending in *-dicius*, *-ficius* and *-volus* form the comparative in *-entior* and the superlative in *-entissimus*, as if from *-dicēns*, etc.

maledicius	slandorous	maledicentior	maledicentissimus
mūnificus	mūnificent	mūnificentior	mūnificentissimus
benevolus	benevolent	benevolentior	benevolentissimus

47. Words ending in *-eus*, *-ius*, and *-uus* are generally compared by prefixing the adverb *magis*, *more*; *maximē*, *most*. Thus *noxius*, *hurtful*; *magis noxius*, *maximē noxius*.

NOTE.—In declining such words, *magis* and *maximē* being adverbs (see note 2, Voc. 7, p. 128), remain unaltered. Thus the feminine is *magis noxia*, accusative *magis noxiam*, etc., neuter *magis noxium*, etc.

EXERCISE 39.

Learn §§ 42-47, pp. 51, 52.

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *prius tempus*, *filia nēquior* (see p. 120, § 1), and (singular only) *frāter nātū maximus*.

(2) Give nominative and accusative of :—

a better part	more words	very many trees
a worse place	the best deeds	the worst deeds
smaller islands	the greatest number	most worthless sons
more trees	very many [men]	the oldest soldier

(3) Put into Latin :—

former times	the inner wall (acc.)	rather old [men]
in former times	of the inner wall	to rather old [men]
the upper fords	on the first night	of most benevolent
of the upper fords	on the next night	[men]
		to a very dutiful son

Rule 22.—When the words *much*,¹ *more*, *most* are used with a noun in the singular number, the neuter nouns *multum*, *plūs*, *plūrimum* are used, with the dependent noun in the genitive :

Much money, *Multum pecūniae*

The genitive used with words of this kind is called the *partitive*² *genitive* because it means a part of the thing spoken of. Compare R. 24, p. 55.

With plural nouns the words *many*,¹ *more*, *most* are treated as adjectives agreeing with their nouns in every way :

More bravery, *Plūs fortitudinis*
More daughters, *Plūrēs filiae*

EXERCISE 40.

§§ 42-47, pp. 51, 52, and R. 22, p. 53.

Vivā vōce :—

very much money	more hope	much wisdom
very many sailors	more time	many allies
to very many sailors	more flowers	many islands

¹ When *much*, *more*, *most* mean quantity, they are put in the neuter and take a genitive. When they refer to number, they are treated as adjectives.

² The partitive genitive generally follows the word on which it depends.

A. 1. Maiōrem partem insulae superat. 2. Maximum (R. 20 (b), p. 50) numerum carrōrum Galli habent. 3. Senis cōnsilium est melius et facilius. 4. Pessimī (R. 20 (b), p. 50) ab omnibus timentur. 5. In duce erat plūs audāciae quam sapientiae. 6. Superiōra vada inferiōribus meliōra sunt. 7. In flūmine sunt minōrēs insulae. 8. Plūrēs ignēs in castris imperātor facit. 9. Optimō militum plūrimum pecūniae dat. 10. Priōre bellō victor erat. 11. Quid peius bellō est? 12. Proximā nocte sociōs in arcem dūxit. 13. Maior perniciēs iūmentōrum quam hominum in trāsitū erat.

B. 1. The enemy have a very great number of foot-soldiers. 2. In the next year he overcomes the smaller states. 3. What is better for men than virtue? 4. In the former summer he led the army across the Alps. 5. The upper part of the river has very high banks. 6. On (= *in* with ablative) the inner wall were many soldiers. 7. In (R. 14, *Caution*, p. 31) our leader there is very much boldness. 8. The lower fords are too (R. 20 (a), p. 50) difficult. 9. The greater part of the enemy is in the woods. 10. There was more hope in the old man than in [his] son.

48. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1st Person.

2nd Person.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	ego	<i>I</i>	tū	<i>thou</i>
Acc.	mē	<i>me</i>	tē	<i>thee</i>
Gen.	mei	<i>of me</i>	tui	<i>of thee</i>
Dat.	mihi	<i>to me</i>	tibi	<i>to thee</i>
Abl.	mē	<i>by me</i>	tē	<i>by thee</i>

PLURAL.

Nom.	nōs	<i>we</i>	vōs	<i>you</i>
Acc.	nōs	<i>us</i>	vōs	<i>you</i>
Gen.	nostri or nostrum ¹	<i>of us</i>	vestri or vestrum ¹	<i>of you</i>
Dat.	nōbīs	<i>to us</i>	vōbīs	<i>to you</i>
Abl.	nōbīs	<i>by us</i>	vōbīs	<i>by you</i>

The **Demonstrative Pronoun**, **is**, **ea**, **id** is used for the Personal Pronoun of the 3rd person, **he**, **she**, **it**.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	is	<i>he</i>	ea	<i>she</i>	id	<i>it</i>
Acc.	eum	<i>him</i>	eam	<i>her</i>	id	<i>it</i>
Gen.	eius	<i>of him</i>	eius	<i>of her</i>	eius	<i>of it</i>
Dat.	eī	<i>to him</i>	eī	<i>to her</i>	eī	<i>to it</i>
Abl.	eō	<i>by him</i>	eā	<i>by her</i>	eō	<i>by it</i>

PLURAL.

Nom.	ī (eī , i)	<i>they</i>	eae	<i>they</i>	ea	<i>they</i>
Acc.	eōs	<i>them</i>	eās	<i>them</i>	ea	<i>them</i>
Gen.	eōrum	<i>of them</i>	eārum	<i>of them</i>	eōrum	<i>of them</i>
Dat.	eīs , iīs	<i>to them</i>	eīs , iīs	<i>to them</i>	eīs , iīs	<i>to them</i>
Abl.	eīs , iīs	<i>by them</i>	eīs , iīs	<i>by them</i>	eīs , iīs	<i>by them</i>

48 (a). The **reflexive pronoun** (3rd person) has no nominative. Its declension is the same for all genders and for singular and plural.

Acc. **sē** or **sēsē** *himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

Gen. **sui** *of* „ „ „ „

Dat. **sibi** *to* „ „ „ „

Abl. **sē** or **sēsē** *by* „ „ „ „

NOTE.—(1) The double form **sēsē** is used emphatically for **sē** (accusative and ablative).

49. *Present tense of the verb To be.*

SINGULAR.

ego	sum	<i>I am</i>
tū	es	<i>thou art</i>
is	est	<i>he is</i>

PLURAL.

nōs	sumus	<i>we are</i>
vōs	estis	<i>you are</i>
īi	sunt	<i>they are</i>

Personal pronouns used as subjects of verbs are not expressed except when emphatic. See R. 30, p. 61.

Rule 23.—When *you* refers to one person it must be translated in Latin by **tū**, and the corresponding singular verb must be used.

Rule 24.—*Nostrum*, of *us*, and *vestrum*, of *you*, can only be used when a number is referred to.¹ *Nostrī*, of *us*, and *vestrī*, of *you*, are used in other cases.

Many of us

Multi nostrum

He is mindful of us

Memor nostrī est

EXERCISE 41.

A. 1. Mihi multōs librōs pater dat. 2. Nōs sumus in hortō, vōs estis in urbe. 3. Eīs librōs dat, nōbīs equōs (dat). 4. Mē māter culpāt, tē laudat. 5. Nēmō nostrum vōs laudat. 6. Hostēs audācēs sunt; cōsilia ducis eīs nōta sunt. 7. Tibi hortus grātus est, nōbīs urbs grāta est. 8. In mē est amor patriae. 9. Stultī saepe sē laudant. 10. Soror bona est; frātrēs eam laudant.

B. 1. The leader praises us. 2. Who blames you, O son? 3. Many of us blame her. 4. The city is not pleasing to us in summer. 5. The children are always mindful of us. 6. In you, O soldiers, there is great love of valour. 7. Which of you blames me? 8. Wise [men] do not praise themselves. 9. The plans of the enemy are known to him. 10. To me he gives gold, to you silver.

Rule 25.—Translation of *it* and *they*. In Latin *it* and *they* may be masculine, feminine or neuter, according to the gender of the word they stand for.

Thus *it* standing for *field*, ager (masc.) = *is*.

it „ „ *spear*, hasta (fem.) = *ea*.

it „ „ *war*, bellum (neut.) = *id*.

Rule 26.—*Is*, *ea*, *id* is a demonstrative pronoun used adjectively and meaning *that*,² plural *those*.

At that time

Eō tempore

In those times

Eīs temporibus

¹ *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are partitive genitives, i.e., they can only be used when a number (i.e., a part) of us or of you is meant. All of us is *nōs omnēs*.

² It will be seen from this rule that when *is* is used to translate *he* it really means *that man*; *ea* means *that woman*, etc.

The plurals of *is*, viz., *ii*, *eae*, *ea*, will therefore be frequently translated by *those* as well as by *they* and *them*.

EXERCISE 42.

A. 1. Equus niger est ; quis eum nōn laudat ? 2. Cōnsilia bona sunt ; ea nōbīs nōta sunt. 3. Fēmina bona sēsē nōn laudat. 4. Rēx scūtum militī dat ; mīles id amīcō dat. 5. Ea templa sunt Neptūnī domus. 6. Eō diē rēx in templō erat. 7. Patria eīs grāta est, eam omnēs laudant. 8. Eā nocte comitēs in castrīs erant. 9. Castra in cōspectū urbis sunt ; ¹ in eīs ¹ sunt multī militēs. 10. Noctēs hiemis longae sunt ; quis nostrum eās laudat ?

B. 1. The temple is in the wood ; the maidens adorn it with flowers. 2. To them the farmers give corn. 3. In that summer the leader was in Italy. 4. That queen has many islands. 5. In that island are many farmers. 6. The wars of the Gauls are known to you ; Cæsar narrates (= *nārrat*) them. 7. The women are brave ; the citizens praise them. 8. He gives those things (R. 15 (b), p. 41) to the leader. 9. To me he gives water ; to her wine. 10. In us is love of [our] father-land.

50. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

<i>meus,</i>	<i>mea,</i>	<i>meum</i>	<i>my, mine</i>
<i>tuus,</i>	<i>tua,</i>	<i>tuum</i>	<i>thy, thine</i>
<i>suus,</i>	<i>sua,</i>	<i>suum</i>	<i>his, hers, its, their</i>
<i>noster,</i>	<i>nostra,</i>	<i>nostrum</i>	<i>our, ours</i>
<i>vester,</i>	<i>vestra,</i>	<i>vestrum</i>	<i>your, yours</i>

These words are all declined like *bonus* or *niger* (except that *meus* has voc. sing. masc. *mī*) and agree with their nouns in gender, number and case. Thus *pater meus*, acc. *patrem meum* ; *māter mea*, dat. *mātrī meae*.

Rule 27.—The possessive adjective is as often as not placed after its noun : our father = *pater noster*.

¹ The pupil should remember the number and gender of *castra*.

EXERCISE 43.

Put into Latin :—

to my brother	our friend	my friends (acc.)
my brothers (acc.)	to our friend	of my horses
of my brothers	our island	by my voice
my land	in our island	of our city
of my land	your garden	our [men] (R. 15,
my lands (acc.)	your gardens	p. 41)
thy plans	your war	to your mother
of thy plans	your wars	your wounds
		into thy hands

51. *How to translate his, her, etc.*

There is some difficulty in translating the words *his*, *her*, *its* and *their*. Sometimes *suus* is used, sometimes *eius*, *eōrum*, *eārum*.

Rule 28.—(a) *Suus* can only be used when it refers to the subject¹ of the clause in which it stands.

The king praises his soldiers. *Militēs suōs rēx laudat.*

The subject of *praises* is *king*; *his* = the king's, i.e., *his* stands for the subject of the sentence, and is therefore translated by *suus*.

In using *suus* it must be noted that *suus* must agree with the noun it goes with. Thus² :—

his mother	<i>suam mātrem</i>	his shield	<i>suum scūtum</i>
his sword	<i>suum gladium</i>	their spear	<i>suam hastam</i>
his friends	<i>suōs amīcōs</i>	their spears	<i>suās hastās</i>

* * NOTE.—Each of the words *suus*, *sua*, *suum* can mean *his*, *her*, *its* or *their*, the gender depending entirely on the noun *his*, etc., agrees with. Thus in the case of *suus* :—

The father praises his son	= <i>suum filium</i>
The mother praises her son	= <i>suum filium</i>
The horse carries its master	= <i>suum dominum</i>
The soldiers praise their leader	= <i>suum ducem</i>

¹ These rules will require a slight qualification later. For the present they will cover all cases that occur.

² For the present it is better not to use *suus* in the nominative.

(b) When *his, her, its* or *their* do not stand for the subject of the sentence the words *eius, eorum, eārum* are used.

I praise her daughters.

Eius filiās ego laudō

Here *I* is the subject of the sentence ; *her* cannot stand for *I*, and so we translate, *I praise the daughters of that [woman]*. R. 26, p. 56.

* * NOTE.—The following is a very good test for *suus* and *eius* : If *his, her, etc.*, can be turned into *that man's, that woman's, etc.*, *eius, etc.* (not *suus*), must be used.

Thus, I praise her (= that woman's) daughter [*eius filiam*]. In the queen praises her daughters, if *her* means the queen's *suus* is used by R. 28, p. 58. If, however, *her* means that woman's, *eius* is used.

Remember that *suus* is an adjective and agrees in number, gender and case with the noun it is used with ; *eius, etc.*, are not adjectives, but the genitive cases of *is, ea, id*, and they agree with the words they stand for in number and gender.

The women are brave ; I praise *Fēminae fortēs sunt ; eārum*
their steadfastness *cōstantiam laudō*

(c) In cases like *Cæsar and his friend* *eius* is always used.¹

Cæsar and his friend

Caesar et eius amicus

EXERCISE 44.

Vivā vōce. Translate the following, using *suus* (R. 28, p. 58) :—

his friends (acc.)	their garden (acc.)	his arrows (acc.)
of his friends	their bodies	his slaves (acc.)
her brother (acc.)	their mother (acc.)	his swords (acc.)
her horses (acc.)	of their sister	his shields (acc.)

A. 1. *Pueri mātrem suam laudant.* 2. *Puella aegra est ; eius māter tristis est.* 3. *Dux militēs laudat ; eorum² liberis pecūniam dat.* 4. *In hortō sunt multae arborēs ; eārum² fructus bonus est.* 5. *Dux suōs* (R. 15, p. 41) *laudat.* 6.

¹ *Cæsar and his friend are here* means *Cæsar is here and his friend is here*. Thus *his* is in one sentence and refers to the subject of another, and so does not fall under R. 28, p. 58.

² What words do these words refer to ? Explain their gender.

ultissimus sua (R. 15 (b), p. 41) semper laudat. 7. magna; eius incolae sunt nautae. 8. Stulti verba

My brothers always praise their friends. 2. Our known to our companions. 3. The girl loves her her mother, her sisters and her brothers. 4. The his children. 5. The islands are in the great sea; habitants are very bold. 6. Your words, O Claudius, always wise. 7. The hunter wounds the lion with his Claudius sends his [men] into Italy. 9. Claudius girl and her companions. 10. The boys and their are bold and brave.

52. THE VERB.

verbs are divided into four classes or conjugations according to the sound of the present stem as seen in the present infinitive

ation (Ā-stems)	ending in -āre, amāre to love
ation (Ē-stems)	„ -ēre, monēre to advise
ation (consonant and U-stems)	„ -ere, regere to rule
ation (Ī-stems)	„ -ire, audire to hear

verbs have four principal parts, from which the various tenses, persons, numbers, etc., are obtained by altering the endings.

The principal parts of a verb are :—

- 1) The present indicative (amō).
- 2) The present infinitive (amāre).
- 3) The perfect indicative (amāvī).
- 4) The supine in -um¹ (amātum).

Present tense of amō.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1. I am loving.	amā-mus, we love or are loving
2. You lovest or art loving	amā-tis, you love or are loving
3. He loves or is loving	ama-nt, they love or are loving

It is seen that the endings are obtained by changing the final *at*, etc.

The *supine* in -um, as will be explained later, is only used to follow after verbs of motion; the *supine* in -ū is only used after adjectives, e.g., hard, easy, etc.

Rule 29.—In Latin there is no separate continuous ¹ form of the tense. **Amō** means *I love* and *I am loving*.

Rule 30.—The subject pronouns of verbs are not expressed unless they are very emphatic. (We) love = *amāmus*.

EXERCISE 45.

A. Write out the present tense of **culpō**, *I blame*; **ornō**, *I adorn*; **dō**, *I give*. (See footnote 1, p. 63.)

B. Give the Latin for :—

we praise	they give	we delight	he ploughs
they praise	I give	we lay waste	he wounds
thou praisest	thou givest	we adorn	thou praisest
he wounds	thou blamest	you adorn	we plough
we wound	they blame	you delight	we give
they wound	he delights	you wound	you give

C. Put into English :—

ornāmus	arātis	dās	datis
ornās	vastāmus	culpās	culpāmus
dēlectant	vastant	culpātis	vulnerat
arō	dant	laudāmus	vastō

Imperfect tense of amō.

amā-bam, *I was loving*
 amā-bās, *thou wast loving*
 amā-bat, *he was loving*
 amā-bāmus, *we were loving*
 amā-bātis, *you were loving*
 amā-bant, *they were loving*

Future tense of amō.

amā-bō, *I shall love*
 amā-bis, *thou wilt love*
 amā-bit, *he will love*
 amā-bimus, *we shall love*
 amā-bitis, *you will love*
 amā-bunt, *they will love*

The imperfect endings of *am-ō* are got by changing the *-ō* into *-ābam*, etc.; the future by changing *ō* into *-ābō*, etc.

Rule 31.—The imperfect tense, e.g., **amābam*, besides meaning *I was loving* (continuous), also means *I used-to-love*.

¹ *culpō*, *I blame*, corresponds to two tenses in English: *I blame* (momentary present), or *I am blaming* (continuous present).

EXERCISE 46.

- (1) Write out imperfect and future of *laudō*, *arō* and *dō*.
 (2) Put into Latin :—

he was blaming ¹	they were pointing out	they were over-
we shall blame	we shall lay waste	coming
they were adorning	we are laying waste	they were entering
I shall adorn	we were laying waste	I was entering
you will delight	he was ploughing	I was giving
I was delighting	he will plough	I shall give
		I shall point out

A. 1. Nauta agricolam culpābat. 2. Galli Rōmānōs superābunt. 3. Scīpiō insulam superābat. 4. Agricolā locum militibus mōnstrābat. 5. Hieme agricolae agrōs arābunt. 6. Dux urbem crās intrābit. 7. Rōmānī finēs hostium vastābunt. 8. Mōnstrābimus urbem pulcherrimam militibus. 9. Cūr, miles, ducem culpābās? 10. Priore bellō Rōmānī ex equis (Ex. 34, A. 2, p. 45) pugnābant (R. 31, p. 61).

B. 1. Thou wilt overcome the Gauls. 2. The boys were pointing out the place to the leader. 3. The mother will adorn the girl with a beautiful garment. 4. The girls were adorning the temple with flowers. 5. Why were you not ploughing the fertile valley? 6. [We] shall give rewards to the soldiers. 7. They were laying-waste the territories of the Gauls. 8. The soldiers were entering the city. 9. The diligent husbandman will plough [his] land. 10. The Gauls used-to-fight (R. 31, p. 61) in (= out of) chariots.

55. When the verb means that an action is completed at the time referred to, the tense is said to be perfect. Thus *I write* is present; *I have written*, meaning that the action is completed, is perfect.

There are three perfects corresponding to the present, imperfect and future.

¹ The pupil should first say what the tense of the English is.

Simple Tenses.

Present—I love
 Imperfect—I was loving
 Future—I shall love

Perfect Tenses.

Present perfect or perfect—I have loved
 Past perfect or pluperfect—I had loved
 Future perfect—I shall have loved

NOTE.—Have shows that the tense is the perfect; had the pluperfect; shall have shows the future perfect.

56. In Latin verbs all perfect tenses are got by adding different endings to the perfect stem. In the same verb this perfect stem is found in all the perfect tenses.

Verbs like *amō* form the perfect stem by changing *-ō* into *-āv*. Thus *amō*-, *amāv*-; *laudō*-, *laudāv*-.

NOTE.—The perfect of *dō*, *I give*, is *ded-i*.¹

The perfect tenses of amō. Perfect stem amāv-.

PERFECT.²

amāv-i, I have loved or I loved
amāv-istī, thou hast loved or thou lovedst
amāv-it, he has loved or he loved
amāv-imus, we have loved or we loved
amāv-istis, you have loved or you loved
amāv-ērunt or *amāv-ēre*, they have loved or they loved

PLUPERFECT.²

amāv-eram, I had loved
amāv-erās, thou hadst loved
amāv-erat, he had loved
amāv-erāmus, we had loved
amāv-erātis, you had loved
amāv-erant, they had loved

FUTURE PERFECT.²

amāv-erō, I shall have loved
amāv-eris, thou wilt have loved
amāv-erit, he will have loved
amāv-erimus, we shall have loved
amāv-eritis, you will have loved
amāv-erint, they will have loved

Rule 32 (a).—The perfect tense has two meanings. Thus *amāvī* means I have loved and I loved.

¹ This is the only verb which has a short *a* in the infinitive (*dare*). The short *a* (the stem vowel) occurs throughout the verb, except in the 2nd person singular present indicative (*dās*) and in the imperative singular (*dā*). Thus, *damus*, *datis*; *dabō*, etc.; *dabam*, etc.

² The endings *-ī*, *-istī*, etc., should first be learned separately. They occur in these tenses of all Latin verbs.

Rule 32. (b).—When *I loved* is made negative it becomes *I did not love*. *I did not love* means *I loved not*, and *did love* must be translated generally by the perfect tense.

EXERCISE 47.

- (1) Give the perfect stem of the following verbs :—

culpō	vastō	ōrnō	dō
portō	arō	superō	rēgnō
vulnerō	dēlectō	intrō	parō

- (2) Say the endings of the pluperfect and future perfect.
 (3) Turn into Latin :—

he had carried	they have dwelt
we have fought	they prepared
I shall have prepared	he will have avoided
you had avoided	we carried
you had carried	we prepared
he has reigned	we avoided

A. 1. Iam nautae aurum in templum portaverant. 2. Galli strēnuē pugnāverunt. 3. Multōs annōs (R. 14 (b), p. 36) in Britannīā rēgnāverat. 4. Dux militēs laudābat quod Gallōs bellō superāverant. 5. Priore annō in Galliā strēnuē pugnāvimus. 6. Convocāverunt sapientēs (R. 15 and 30, pp. 41, 61) quod in magnō periculō sunt. 7. Insulae incolae nōn in oppidiis habitāverunt. 8. Cervus orūra culpāverat; cornua laudāverat. 9. Ducēs servīs arma dedērunt quod erant in magnō periculō. 10. Cōsul militum impetum laudābat.

B. 1. By [his] long legs the stag had avoided many dangers. 2. The allies have prepared arms. 3. They had dwelt for many years in the island. 4. [We] have carried the swords into the citadel. 5. The Gauls dwelt in the woods. 6. [In] many battles we had overcome the Romans. 7. He was praising the leader because our men had fought vigorously. 8. The consul called together [his] allies because the enemy (plural) were preparing arms. 9. Already you have overcome the enemy, soldiers. 10. The Romans did not always surpass (= overcome) the Gauls [in] boldness.

Subjunctive Mood of amō.

PRESENT.

amem, I may love
amēs, thou mayest love
amet, he may love
amēmus, we may love
amētis, you may love
ament, they may love

IMPERFECT.

amā-rem, I might love
amā-rēs, thou mightest love
amā-ret, he might love
amā-rēmus, we might love
amā-rētis, you might love
amā-rent, they might love

PERFECT.

amāv-erim,¹ *I may have loved*
amāv-eris, *thou mayst have loved*
amāv-erit, *he may have loved*
amāv-erimus, *we may have loved*
amāv-eritis, *you may have loved*
amāv-erint, *they may have loved*

PLUPERFECT.

amāv-issem,¹ *I might have loved*
amāv-issēs, *thou mightest have loved*
amāv-isset, *he might have loved*
amāv-issēmus, *we might have loved*
amāv-issētis, *you might have loved*
amāv-issent, *they might have loved*

Rule 33.—The imperfect subjunctive can always be found by adding the endings *-m, -s, etc.*, to the infinitive.

Rule 34.—The present subjunctive is often translated by the English *may*; the imperfect subjunctive by *might* (or *should*); the perfect subjunctive by *may have*; and the pluperfect subjunctive by *might* (or *should*) *have*. But the Latin subjunctive is often used when the corresponding English is indicative.

57. The subjunctive in clauses of purpose :—

He praises the soldier **that he may fight well**; the words in thick type denote purpose, and they form a clause of purpose, the verb being the subjunctive.

In clauses of purpose **that** is translated by **ut**; **that . . .**
not by **nē**.²

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) He praises the soldier that he
may fight well | Mīlitem laudat ut bene
pugnet |
| (b) He praises the soldier that he
may not fight badly | Mīlitem laudat nō male
pugnet |

¹ Notice that the stem amāv- is still the same as in the perfect tenses of the indicative. See p. 56.

* In English the infinitive is often used to express purpose; in Latin, never.

58. In negative clauses of purpose *lest* is sometimes used instead of *that . . . not*. *Lest* is translated by *nē*, and always takes the subjunctive.

59. The tense used in the subjunctive always depends on the tense of the principal verb. For this purpose all tenses are divided into two classes—(a) tenses which do not refer to the past, often called **primary tenses**; (b) tenses which do refer to the past, called **historic or past tenses**.

(a) *Primary Tenses.*

Present

Future simple

Future perfect

True Perfect with *have* (R. 32

(a), p. 63).

(b) *Historic Tenses.*

Imperfect

Pluperfect

Perfect (aorist), *without have* (R. 32

(a), p. 63).

Rule 35. Sequence of tenses.¹—The present subjunctive is used after primary tenses; the imperfect subjunctive is used after historic tenses.²

Thus (a) He fights that he may conquer.

(b) He fought that he might conquer.

Rule 36.—Since the perfect indicative has two meanings (R. 32 (a), p. 63) it can be followed by either present subjunctive or imperfect subjunctive, the one used depending entirely on the meaning of the perfect.

(a) He *has fought* (*pugnāvit*) that he *may overcome* (*superet*).

(b) He *fought* (*pugnāvit*) that he *might overcome* (*superāret*).

EXERCISE 48.

Vivā vōce :—

A. he may blame	we may fight	I may plough
we may blame	we may enter	I might plough
they may lay waste	we may give	you may delight
he might give	they might overcome	you might de-
they might give	they might carry	light
they may give	they might avoid	they may adorn
		they might adorn

¹ I.e., the way in which one tense follows another.

² This rule will be amplified later. It is given here in this incomplete form in order that the pupil may see from the very first how one tense depends on another.

Before translating B explain how R. 35, p. 66, on the sequence of tenses is observed in the italicised verbs.

B. 1. He *fight*s that the leader *may* praise. 2. He *was* fighting that the leader *might* praise. 3. We *shall* plough that we *may* prepare corn. 4. We *had* ploughed that we *might* prepare corn. 5. You *have* prepared arms that you *may* fight. 6. You *were* preparing arms that you *might* fight. 7. He *will* fight that he *may* obtain (= prepare) booty. 8. He *was* fighting that he *might* obtain booty. 9. The leader *has* prepared¹ arms that they *may* set free [their] friends. 10. The leader *prepared*¹ arms that they *might* set free [their] friends.

EXERCISE 49.

A. 1. Arma servīs dat ut pugnent. 2. Lēgātī in urbem festinābant ut victōriam nūntiārent. 3. Dux militēs laudābat nē pericula vitārent. 4. Cōsul praemia militibus dabit ut strēnuē pugnent. 5. Agricola frūmentum dat nē Galli agrōs vastent. 6. Senex māteriam parābat ut domum aedificāret. 7. Cōsul exercitum revocāvit ut in Britannīā pugnet. 8. Galli arma parābant ut contrā Rōmānōs pugnārent. 9. Imperātor lēgātōs mittit ut omnia rēgī nūntient. 10. Nautae flōrēs in templum portāverant ut puellae statuās ōrnārent.

B. 1. Soldiers will fight vigorously that they may obtain (= prepare) great booty. 2. The allies were fighting vigorously that the leader might not blame them. 3. We have called together the allies that the enemy may not overcome us. 4. The farmer had praised the soldiers that he might avoid the evils of war. 5. The mother is preparing beautiful garments that she may delight the maidens. 6. The leader gave money to the old man that he might not show the place to the enemy. 7. Caesar recalled the soldiers out-of (*ex*) Italy that they might fight in Gaul. 8. He has hastened into the town that he may announce the victory to the citizens. 9. We shall fight vigorously that we may set free our children. 10. We shall call together the allies that the Gauls may not lay waste our lands.

¹ See Rule 36, p. 66.

The Imperative Mood of *Amā*.

PRESENT TENSE.

amā, love (*thou*)

amā-te, love (*ye*)

FUTURE OR LEGAL IMPERATIVE.

amā-tō, *thou must love*

amā-tōte, *you must love*

amā-tō, *he must love*

ama-nō, *they must love*

60. What is called the future imperative is chiefly used in wills and legal documents. It is called future because it usually implies that the action referred to will be done not in the immediate present, but at some future time.

61. Rules for the imperative :—

Rule 37.—(a) The imperative mood expresses a ⁶command.

(b) In all negative commands the word for *not* is *nē*.

NOTE.—A negative command is often called a prohibition.

(c) When the command is 2nd person and negative it is translated ¹ by *nē* and the perfect subjunctive.²

Praise the king

Laudā rēgem

Do not praise the king

Nē rēgem laudāveris

Do not praise, do not blame, etc., is to be translated therefore by the perfect subjunctive with *nē*.

(d) When a command is 1st or 3rd person it is translated by the present subjunctive. Thus Let us praise = may we praise, Let him praise = may he praise.

Let us praise the king

Rēgem laudēmus

Let him not hasten

Nē festīnet

¹ That is in prose. In poetry *nē* is sometimes used with the ordinary imperative.

² Other ways of translating a negative command will be explained later. The explanation of this use of the perfect subjunctive is as follows: instead of bluntly saying *Do not praise*, the Romans said courteously *May you not have praised!*

EXERCISE 50.

Rule 38.—Whenever *you* is used in speaking of one ¹ person always translate it by *thou* in Latin, making the verb singular.

Put into Latin ² :—

call	do not carry	let him not wound	enter
blame	do not prepare	let him not give	do not enter
give	do not avoid	let us not give	let us enter
plough	let him plough	you must not enter	let them enter
point out	let us adorn	thou must avoid	let them not give
fight	let us fight	let him dwell	do not give

A. 1. Dā vinum aegris (R. 15, p. 41). 2. Mōnstrāte locum explorātoribus. 3. Statuam flōribus ōrnēmus. 4. Nē parentēs culpāveritis. 5. Parāte arma, militēs. 6. Nē puer in hortō ambulet. 7. Arāte vestrōs agrōs, agricolae. 8. Vitāte bellī malā cōsiliis bonis. 9. Virginēs templum flōribus ōrantō. 10. Nē urbem nocte intrāveris.

B. 1. Do not show the way to the spy. 2. O slaves, carry the corn into the city. 3. Do not give the booty to the slothful soldier. 4. Let us call together our [men]. 5. Prepare arms, Gauls, that you may overcome the Romans. 6. Let the girls ³ adorn [their] mother with a beautiful garment. 7. Recall (R. 38) the army, great consul, that it may fight in Italy. 8. O ambassadors, hasten into the city; announce the victory to the consul. 9. Let us prepare wood that we may build a house. 10. Do not praise the deeds of the wicked (R. 15, p. 41).

¹ *Vōs* is always plural in meaning: *nōs* and *noster* are sometimes used for *ego* and *meus*.

² Where there is nothing to show whether the command in this part of the exercise is singular or plural, translate both ways for practice.

³ When *let* is changed to *may* (R. 37 (d) p. 68), what case is girls? Who does the action? (§ 4, p. 1).

FIRST CONJUGATION: \bar{A} -STEMS—ACTIVE VOICE.

amō, amā-re, amāv-i, amāt-um, to love.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

† amō, <i>I love or am loving</i>	amāv-i, <i>I have loved *</i>
amā-s, <i>thou lovest or art loving</i>	amāv-isti, <i>thou hast loved *</i>
ama-t, <i>he loves or is loving</i>	amāv-it, <i>he has loved *</i>
amā-mus, <i>we love or are loving</i>	amāv-imus, <i>we have loved *</i>
amā-tis, <i>you love or are loving</i>	amāv-istis, <i>you have loved *</i>
ama-nt, <i>they love or are loving</i>	amāv-erunt or } <i>they have</i> amāv-ere } <i>loved *</i>

† In amō and amem, etc., the \bar{A} of the stem is not seen because it has coalesced with other vowels.

* Or *I loved, thou lovedst, he loved, we loved, you loved, they loved* (R. 32 (a), p. 63).

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

amā-bam, <i>I was loving</i>	amāv-eram, <i>I had loved</i>
amā-bās, <i>thou wast loving</i>	amāv-erās, <i>thou hadst loved</i>
amā-bat, <i>he was loving</i>	amāv-erat, <i>he had loved</i>
amā-bāmus, <i>we were loving</i>	amāv-erāmus, <i>we had loved</i>
amā-bātis, <i>you were loving</i>	amāv-erātis, <i>you had loved</i>
amā-bant, <i>they were loving</i>	amāv-erant, <i>they had loved</i>

FUTURE.

FUTURE PERFECT.

amā-bō, <i>I shall love</i>	amāv-erō, <i>I shall have loved</i>
amā-bis, <i>thou wilt love</i>	amāv-eris, <i>thou wilt have loved</i>
amā-bit, <i>he will love</i>	amāv-erit, <i>he will have loved</i>
amā-bimus, <i>we shall love</i>	amāv-erimus, <i>we shall have loved</i>
amā-bitis, <i>you will love</i>	amāv-eritis, <i>you will have loved</i>
amā-bunt, <i>they will love</i>	amāv-erint, <i>they will have loved</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

† amem, *I may love*
 amēs, *thou mayst love*
 amet, *he may love*
 amēmus, *we may love*
 amētis, *you may love*
 ament, *they may love*

PERFECT.

amāv-erim, *I may have loved*
 amāv-eris, *thou mayst have loved*
 amāv-erit, *he may have loved*
 amāv-erimus, *we may have loved*
 amāv-eritis, *you may have loved*
 amāv-erint, *they may have loved*

IMPERFECT.

amā-rem, *I might * love*
 amā-rēs, *thou mightest love*
 amā-ret, *he might love*
 amā-rēmus, *we might love*
 amā-rētis, *you might love*
 amā-rent, *they might love*

PLUPERFECT.

amāv-issem, *I should have loved*
 amāv-issēs, *thou wouldst have loved*
 amāv-isset, *he would have loved*
 amāv-issēmus, *we should have loved*
 amāv-issētis, *you would have loved*
 amāv-issent, *they would have loved*

* Or *should*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

amā, *love thou*
 amā-te, *love ye*

FUTURE OR LEGAL TENSE.

amā-tō, *love thou*
 amā-tō, *let him love*
 amā-tōte, *love ye*
 ama-ntō, *let them love*

INFINITIVE. .

Pres. amā-re, *to love*
 Perf. amāv-isse, *to have loved*
 Fut. amāt-ūrus esse, *to be*
 about to love

GERUND.

Acc. ama-ndum, *the loving*
 Gen. ama-ndi, *of loving*
 Dat. ama-ndō, *for loving*
 Abl. ama-ndō, *by loving*

SUPINES.

amāt-um, *in order to love*
 amāt-ū, *in or for loving*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. amā-ns, -ntis, *loving*
 Fut. amāt-ūrus, -a, -um,
 about to love

SECOND CONJUGATION: \bar{E} -STEMS—ACTIVE VOICE.

monē-ō, monē-re, monu-i, monit-um, to advise.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

monē-ō, I advise or am advising
*monē-s, thou advisest **
monē-t, he advises or is advising
monē-mus, we advise †
monē-tis, you advise †
monē-nt, they advise †

* Or art advising
 † Or are advising.

PERFECT.

monu-i, I have advised or advised
monu-isti, thou hast advised ‡
monu-it, he has advised §
monu-imus, we have advised §
monu-istis, you have advised §
monu-ērunt or } they have ad-
monu-ēre } vided §

‡ Or advisedst.
 § Or advised.

IMPERFECT.

monē-bam, I was advising
monē-bās, thou wast advising
monē-bat, he was advising
monē-bāmus, we were advising
monē-bātis, you were advising
monē-bant, they were advising

PLUPERFECT.

monu-eram, I had advised
monu-erās, thou hadst advised
monu-erat, he had advised
monu-erāmus, we had advised
monu-erātis, you had advised
monu-erant, they had advised

FUTURE.

monē-bō, I shall advise
monē-bis, thou wilt advise
monē-bit, he will advise
monē-bimus, we shall advise
monē-bitis, you will advise
monē-bunt, they will advise

FUTURE PERFECT.

monu-erō, I shall have advised
monu-eris, thou wilt have advised
monu-erit, he will have advised
monu-erimus, we shall have advised
monu-eritis, you will have advised
monu-erint, they will have advised

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

mone-am, I may advise
mone-ās, thou mayst advise
mone-at, he may advise
mone-āmus, we may advise
mone-ātis, you may advise
mone-ant, they may advise

PERFECT.

monu-erim, I may have advised
monu-eris, thou mayst have advised
monu-erit, he may have advised
monu-erimus, we may have advised
monu-eritis, you may have advised
monu-erint, they may have advised

IMPERFECT.

*monē-rem, I might * advise*
monē-rēs, thou mightest ad-
vise
monē-ret, he might advise
monē-rēmus, we might ad-
vise
monē-rētis, you might advise
monē-rent, they might ad-
vise

PLUPERFECT.

monu-issem, I should have advised
monu-issēs, thou wouldst have ad-
vised
monu-isset, he would have advised
monu-issēmus, we should have ad-
vised
monu-issētis, you would have ad-
vised
monu-issent, they would have ad-
vised

* Or should.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

monē, advise thou
monē-te, advise ye

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

monē-tō, thou advise
monē-tō, let him advise
monē-tōte, advise ye
mone-ntō, let them advise

INFINITIVE.

Pres. *monē-re, to advise*
 Perf. *monu-isse, to have advised*
 Fut. *monit-ūrus esse, to be*
about to advise

GERUND.

Acc. *mone-ndum, the advising*
 Gen. *mone-ndi, of advising*
 Dat. *mone-ndō, for advising*
 Abl. *mone-ndō, by advising*

SUPINES.

monit-um, in order, to advise
monit-ū, in or for advising

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. *monē-ns, -ntis, advising*
 Fut. *monit-ūrus, -a, -um,*
about to advise

THIRD CONJUGATION : CONSONANT OR -U¹ STEMS— ACTIVE VOICE.

reg-ō, reg-ere, rēx-i, rēct-um, to rule.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

reg-ō, *I rule or am ruling*
reg-is, *thou rulest or art ruling*
reg-it, *he rules or is ruling*
reg-imus, *we rule or are ruling*
reg-itis, *you rule or are ruling*
reg-unt, *they rule or are ruling*

PERFECT.

rēx-i, *I have ruled or I ruled*
rēx-isti, *thou hast ruled **
rēx-it, *he has ruled or he ruled*
rēx-imus, *we have ruled †*
rēx-istis, *you have ruled ‡*
rēx-ērunt or } *they have ruled*
rēx-ēre } *or they ruled*

* Or thou ruledst.

† Or we ruled.

‡ Or you ruled.

IMPERFECT.

reg-ēbam, *I was ruling*
reg-ēbās, *thou wast ruling*
reg-ēbat, *he was ruling*
reg-ēbāmus, *we were ruling*
reg-ēbātis, *you were ruling*
reg-ēbant, *they were ruling*

PLUPERFECT.

rēx-eram, *I had ruled*
rēx-erās, *thou hadst ruled*
rēx-erat, *he had ruled*
rēx-erāmus, *we had ruled*
rēx-erātis, *you had ruled*
rēx-erant, *they had ruled*

FUTURE.

reg-am, *I shall rule*
reg-ēs, *thou wilt rule*
reg-et, *he will rule*
reg-ēmus, *we shall rule*
reg-ētis, *you will rule*
reg-ent, *they will rule*

FUTURE PERFECT.

rēx-erō, *I shall have ruled*
rēx-eris, *thou wilt have ruled*
rēx-erit, *he will have ruled*
rēx-erimus, *we shall have ruled*
rēx-eritis, *you will have ruled*
rēx-erint, *they will have ruled*

¹Some verbs of the third conjugation have stems ending in u :
e.g., minu-ere.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

reg-am, *I may rule*
 reg-ās, *thou mayest rule*
 reg-at, *he may rule*
 reg-āmus, *we may rule*
 reg-ātis, *you may rule*
 reg-ant, *they may rule*

PERFECT.

rēx-erim, *I may have ruled*
 rēx-eris, *thou mayest have ruled*
 rēx-erit, *he may have ruled*
 rēx-erimus, *we may have ruled*
 rēx-eritis, *you may have ruled*
 rēx-erint, *they may have ruled*

IMPERFECT.

rege-rem, *I might * rule*
 rege-rēs, *thou mightest rule*
 rege-ret, *he might rule*
 rege-rēm^{us}, *we might rule*
 rege-rētis, *you might rule*
 rege-rent, *they might rule*

PLUPERFECT.

rēx-isse^m, *I should have ruled*
 rēx-issēs, *thou wouldst have ruled*
 rēx-isset, *he would have ruled*
 rēx-issēm^{us}, *we should have ruled*
 rēx-issētis, *you would have ruled*
 rēx-issent, *they would have ruled*

* Or should.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

reg-e, *rule thou*
 reg-ite, *rule ye*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

reg-itō, *rule thou*
 reg-itō, *let him rule*
 reg-itōte, *rule ye*
 reg-untō, *let them rule*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. reg-ere, *to rule*
 Perf. rēx-isse, *to have ruled*
 Fut. rēct-ūrus esse, *to be*
 about to rule

GERUND.

Acc. reg-endum, *the ruling*
 Gen. reg-endi, *of ruling*
 Dat. reg-endō, *for ruling*
 Abl. reg-endō, *by ruling*

SUPINES.

rēct-um, *in order to rule*
 rēct-ū, *in or for ruling*

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. reg-ēns, -entis, *ruling*
 Fut. rēct-ūrus, -a, -um, *about to*
 rule

FOURTH CONJUGATION : I-STEMS—ACTIVE VOICE.

audi-ō, audi-re, audiv-I, audit-um, to hear.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

audi-ō, I hear or am hearing	audiv-I, I have heard or I heard
audi-s, thou hearest *	audiv-isti, thou hast heard †
audi-t, he hears or is hearing	audiv-it, he has heard or he heard
audi-mus, we hear	audiv-imus, we have heard ‡
audi-tis, you hear	audiv-istis, you have heard §
audi-unt, they hear	audiv-erunt or audiv-ēre } they have heard

* Or art hearing.

‡ Or we heard.

† Or thou hearest.

§ Or you heard.

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

audi-ēbam, I was hearing	audiv-eram, I had heard
audi-ēbās, thou wast hearing	audiv-erās, thou hadst heard
audi-ēbat, he was hearing	audiv-erat, he had heard
audi-ēbāmus, we were hearing	audiv-erāmus, we had heard
audi-ēbātis, you were hearing	audiv-erātis, you had heard
audi-ēbant, they were hearing	audiv-erant, they had heard

FUTURE.

FUTURE PERFECT.

audi-am, I shall hear	audiv-erō, I shall have heard
audi-ēs, thou wilt hear	audiv-eris, thou wilt have heard
audi-et, he will hear	audiv-erit, he will have heard
audi-ēmus, we shall hear	audiv-erimus, we shall have heard
audi-ētis, you will hear	audiv-eritis, you will have heard
audi-ent, they will hear	audiv-erint, they will have heard

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

PERFECT.

audi-am , <i>I may hear</i>	audiv-erim , <i>I may have heard</i>
audi-ās , <i>thou mayest hear</i>	audiv-eris , <i>thou mayest have heard</i>
audi-at , <i>he may hear</i>	audiv-erit , <i>he may have heard</i>
audi-āmus , <i>we may hear</i>	audiv-erimus , <i>we may have heard</i>
audi-ātis , <i>you may hear</i>	audiv-eritis , <i>you may have heard</i>
audi-ant , <i>they may hear</i>	audiv-erint , <i>they may have heard</i>

IMPERFECT.

PLUPERFECT.

audi-rem , <i>I might * hear</i>	audiv-issem , <i>I should have heard</i>
audi-rēs , <i>thou mightest hear</i>	audiv-issēs , <i>thou wouldst have heard</i>
audi-ret , <i>he might hear</i>	audiv-isset , <i>he would have heard</i>
audi-rēmus , <i>we might hear</i>	audiv-issēmus , <i>we should have heard</i>
audi-rētis , <i>you might hear</i>	audiv-issētis , <i>you would have heard</i>
audi-rent , <i>they might hear</i>	audiv-issent , <i>they would have heard</i>

* Or should.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

audi , <i>hear thou</i>	audi-tō , <i>hear thou</i>
	audi-tō , <i>let him hear</i>
audi-te , <i>hear ye</i>	audi-tōte , <i>hear ye</i>
	audi-entō , <i>let them hear</i>

INFINITIVE.

GERUND.

Pres. audi-re , <i>to hear</i>	Acc. audi-endum , <i>the hearing</i>
Perf. audiv-isse , <i>to have heard</i>	Gen. audi-endi , <i>of hearing</i>
	Dat. audi-endō , <i>for hearing</i>
Fut. audīt-ūrus esse , <i>to be about to hear</i>	Abl. audi-endō , <i>by hearing</i>

SUPINES.

PARTICIPLES.

audīt-um , <i>in order to hear</i>	Pres. audi-ēns, -entis , <i>hearing</i>
audīt-ū , <i>in or for hearing</i>	Fut. audīt-ūrus, -a, -um , <i>about to hear</i>

62. *Shorter Forms of Perfect Tenses.*

Alongside of Perfects in **-āvi, -ēvi, -ōvi** Shorter Forms are often found, in which **-vi, -ve** or **-vē** do not appear.

(a) Thus in the first conjugation **vi** or **ve** is often omitted, and we have

amāvisti as well as amāsti
amāvērunt „ „ amārunť

(b) In the second conjugation we have

implēvissem as well as implēssem.

(c) In the fourth conjugation,

audivistī as well as audiistī or audistī
audivissem „ „ audiissem or audissem

Similarly *audivit* and *audiit*
audivērunt „ *audiērunt*
audiverō „ *audierō*, etc.
audiveram „ *audieram*, etc.
audiverim „ *audierim*, etc.
audivissem „ *audissem*, etc.

Rule 39.—When two nouns of similar meaning (denoting things which often go together) are joined by *and*, **-que** is used instead of **et**, and it is joined on to the end of the second noun.

Flowers and trees Flōrēs arborēsque

Rule 39 (a).—*He gives me money* = *He gives money to me*. After verbs like *give, owe, offer, set*, etc., **to** (used to translate the dative case) is often omitted in English. In Latin the dative must always be used in such cases.

He gives the boy money Puerō pecūniam dat.

EXERCISE 51.

The Present, Imperfect and Future of moneō.

he has ¹	we were fearing	you restrain
we shall have	thou fearest	you offer
they had (imperf.)	he will fear	they will offer
we owe	we were teaching	thou wilt teach
I was owing	we shall teach	he was teaching
they will owe	we are teaching	they are teaching

A. 1. Caesar in cōnspectū urbis castra habēbat.² 2. Omnia beneficia deīs dēbēmus. 3. Socii Rōmānis frūmentum praebēbant. 4. Animālia asinum timēbant quod leōnis pellem habēbat. 5. Vix militum iram dux coerces. 6. Docēmus puerōs frīgus tolerāre. 7. Galli oppida vicōsque habent. 8. Puerum multīs verbīs coercebimus. 9. Britanniae incolae auxilium Gallīs praebent. 10. Agricola verbīs ferōcibus militēs terrēbunt.

B. 1. He owes me much money (R. 22, p. 53). 2. They will have [their] camp there. 3. We were offering food to the girl. 4. The farmers have fields and gardens (R. 39, p. 78). 5. I shall teach my children to bear heat in summer. 6. The ass terrifies the animals because he has the lion's skin. 7. Who fears the foolish ass? 8. Scarcely does the king restrain the keen soldiers. 9. They will have the camp in that place. 10. We were offering help to [our] allies.

¹ The verb *to have* is used as an auxiliary in forming the perfect tenses, § 55, p. 62, e.g., he has ploughed. But it can also be an independent verb, meaning *to possess*, when it is translated by *habēō*.

² The imperfect must very often be translated by the simple past, e.g., *monēbat* = he was advising or he advised.

63. The clause introduced by *sī* = if expresses a condition. *If he overcomes the enemy* all will praise him.

Rule 40.—In English *if* is followed by the present even when the future is really meant. In Latin *sī* must be followed by the future perfect¹ or future¹ whenever the future is meant.

If he overcomes² the enemy *Sī hostēs superāverit*² omnēs
all men will praise him. eum laudābunt.

The same rule applies to *nisi*, *if not*, *unless*.

EXERCISE 52.

The Perfect Tenses of moneō.

(1) Write the 3rd person perfect of the following, placing a hyphen between the perfect stem and the ending :—

praebeō	teneō	habeō	fleō	compleō
doceō	dāleō	dēbeō	terreō	moveō

(2) I had taught	he has wept
we shall have taught	we had wept
they have taught	you have wept
I shall have held	they had destroyed
we have held	you will have destroyed
you had held	I had moved
we have moved	
thou hast moved	
thou hast frightened	
thou hast destroyed	
he will destroy	
he will have destroyed	

¹ Whether the future or future perfect is used depends entirely on the sense. *We will go out if the sun shines, &c.*, if the sun shall be shining. Here the future simple is the correct tense. But *He will repay me if he succeeds* means *when he shall have succeeded*, and the future perfect must be used in Latin.

² In this sentence the "overcoming" takes place *before* the "praising." The prior action requires the future perfect.

A. 1. Galli in castris sē tenerant. 2. Militēs multās urbēs dēlēverunt. 3. Frigus flōrēs parvōs dēlēbat. 4. Insulam firmō praesidiō tenuimus. 5. Adventus cōsulis exercitum spē complēvit. 6. Decimō annō Graeci Troiam dēlēverunt. 7. Si vōs, Rōmāni, foedera tenueritis, nostra foedera tenēbimus. 8. Militēs fossam aquā complēverunt. 9. Scipiō castra trāns flūmen movēbat. 10. Si ventus fructum dēlēverit agricolae flēbunt.

B. 1. They had filled the ditch with stones and trees (R. 39, p. 78). 2. We have destroyed the towns and villages of the Gauls. 3. If the Romans overcome the Gauls they will destroy [their] village. 4. To-morrow they will move the camp into the plain. 5. The Romans had taught the soldiers (acc.) to bear heat and cold. 6. The consul had filled our men with the hope of booty. 7. He will weep if we restrain (R. 40, p. 80) him. 8. We were weeping because the Greeks had destroyed our city. 9. Why have you not offered corn to us? 10. If the consul moves the camp the allies will offer corn.

EXERCISE 53.

The Subjunctive of moneo (§§ 57-59 and R: 33-36, pp. 65, 66).

Vivā vōce :—

that he may destroy
that he may weep
that we may hold
that you may move
that he might teach
that he might have

that we may not have
that we may not destroy
that you might not weep
that he may not frighten
that we might not offer
that we may not move

A. 1. Exercitum convocābat ut insulam firmō praesidiō tenēret. 2. Militēs festinant ut urbem dēleant. 3. Castra movēmus ut hostēs terrocāmus. 4. Caesar agricolās terrēbat nē hostibus frūmentum praebērent. 5. Frūmentum Caesari praebuerant ut belli mala vitārent. 6. Parēmus arma ut servi nōs timeant. 7. Graeci sociōs convocāverunt ut Troiam dēlērent. 8. Galli auxiliū praebēbunt nē Caesar oppidum

dēleat. 9. Servōs terrēbimus nē arma parent.¹ 10. Convocā militēs ut fossam aquā compleant.

B. 1. We are frightening the farmers that they may offer corn. 2. The leader will blame vigorously that he may restrain the soldiers. 3. Scipio was holding the island with a strong garrison that he might frighten the inhabitants. 4. We shall move the camp that the farmers may not fear the horsemen. 5. Prepare arms, citizens, that you may restrain the soldiers. 6. He offers money that the enemy (plural) may not destroy [his] corn. 7. Cæsar has frightened the Gauls that they may not offer help to the enemy (plural). 8. We had destroyed the city that the allies might keep the treaty. 9. We shall have a camp there that we may obtain (= prepare) food. 10. The consul praises that he may fill our men (R. 15, p. 41) with hope.

Rule 41.—Certain verbs take the dative case in Latin, although they have an accusative in English. The commonest of these are :—

pāreō	<i>I obey</i>	placeō	<i>I please</i>
noceō	<i>I injure</i>	displaceō	<i>I displease</i>
The soldier obeys the leader		Miles ducī pāret	

NOTE.—Verbs like “obey” are transitive in English, but intransitive in Latin: pāreō is really = I am obedient to. Similarly, verbs which mean disobey, harm, help, please, displease, etc., have the dative as their only object.

EXERCISE 54.

On the Imperative of moneō and R. 37, p. 68.

Vivā vōce :—

(1) teach	let us obey	do not teach	let him obey
destroy	let us please	do not please	let him have
weep	let us destroy	do not displease	let him not destroy
frighten	let us offer,	do not fear	do not destroy

¹ It should be noted that first conjugation verbs in the *present subjunctive* greatly resemble the *present indicative* of the 2nd conjugation. Nē here shows that *parent* is subjunctive; it comes therefore from *parāre*.

(2) he pleases me	he has obeyed us
I please my father	do not injure the tree
we obey the laws	we shall obey our king
they obey the leaders	he displeases the master
they had obeyed me	obey the wise
do not displease Cæsar	let us obey the king
do not injure the flowers	do not displease us
do not injure me	he has injured the flower

(3) Write ¹ in opposite columns (a) the present indicative, (b) the present subjunctive of the following pairs of verbs: *parō*, 1, *I prepare*, and *pāreō*, 2, *I obey*; *flō*, 1, *I blow*, and *flēō*, 2, *I weep*; *piācō*, 1, *I appease*, and *placeō*, 2, *I please*.

A. 1. *Pāreāmus lēgibus bonīs*. 2. *Militēs, complēte fossam lapidibus*. 3. *Nē terrueritis insulae incolās*. 4. *Laudā rēgem; imperātōrī pārē*. 5. *Castra in campum moveāmus*. 6. *Nē amicis displiceāmus*. 7. *Flēte, fēminae; militēs hortōs dēlent*. 8. *Frūmentum hostibus nē praeberitis*. 9. *Pārēte duci nē vōs verbis ferōcibus coerceat*. 10. *Animālia pelle leōnis, ō asine, nē terrueris*. 11. *Cōsulēs militiae summum iūs habentō; nēmini pārēntō; illis (= to them) salūs reipūblicae suprēma lēx estō*.²

B. 1. Let us fill the ditch with water. 2. Let us not displease our parents. 3. Restrain the anger of the soldiers with wise words. 4. Do not move the camp across the river. 5. Hold the town with a strong garrison. 6. Soldiers must obey the general. 7. Frighten the farmers that they may not offer corn to the enemy. 8. The cold has injured my trees. 9. Let us teach boys to bear cold. 10. Do not destroy the town, allies.

¹ See footnote, p. 82. Notice the difference of quantity in these pairs of verbs.

² This is the future imperative (§ 60, p. 68) of the verb *to be*, i.e., *let . . . (it) be*.

EXERCISE 55.

On the Present, Imperfect and Future of regō.

Rule 42.—When *to* means motion towards a place or person it is translated by the preposition *ad* with the accusative.

He sends the hostages to Caesar *Obsidēs ad Caesarem mittit*

Vivā vōce :—

he was leading	I shall cover	I was sending
we shall lead	thou wast covering	he will send
they are leading	he is covering	they were sending
I shall lead	he was covering	they are sending
he leads	we shall cover	they will send
they were leading	they will cover	you are sending

A. 1. Scīpiō magnum exercitum in Āfricam mittet. 2. Cōsulēs in Galliam multās legiōnēs dūcēbant. 3. Puer ad mātrem scribēbat. 4. Pater puerī corpus palliō tegit. 5. Puerī multōs librōs legent. 6. Auxilium ad sociōs mittēmus. 7. Quid dicitis, amīci? 8. Saepe ad amīcōs scribēbāmus (R. 31, p. 61). 9. Novās legiōnēs in castra mittēbant. 10. Princeps civitātem bene reget.

B. 1. I, O king, shall lead the cavalry into Italy. 2. We were writing a long letter to the king. 3. The earth will cover the bones of the animals. 4. Caesar sends many hostages to the consul. 5. The boy will read the mother's letter. 6. The allies send help to the Romans. 7. Why were you not reading the letter? 8. What are you reading, friends? 9. If you send (R. 40, p. 80) the boy to me, I will say a few words to him (R. 3, p. 4). 10. Why do you not send a cloak to the old man?

EXERCISE 56.

Perfect Tenses of regō.

(1) Write out, without endings, the perfect stem¹ of *dicō*, *dūcō*, *tegō*, *legō*, *scribō*, *mittō*, *emō*, *vincō*, *claudō*, *dēfendō*, *dēscendō*, *contendō*.

¹ The perfect stem is obtained by taking the ending *-i* from the 1st person of the perfect tense.

(2) *Vivā vōce* :—

he has led	we have written	they have bought
we had led	you had written	they have shut
they will have led	I shall have bought	they have defended
I had read	thou hadst conquered	we had read
thou hast read	they have conquered	we had sent
they have read	they will have conquered	we had said

A. 1. Galli magnam cōpiam frūmentī ēmerant. 2. Nostrī in Ītaliā contendērunt. 3. Crās multōs Gallōs vicerit. 4. Si auxilium ad sociōs miseritis, hostēs vincent. 5. Urbem nostram dēfendēmus; portās iam clausimus. 6. Cōpiās Rōmānōrum Hannibal vicit. 7. Caesar magnis itineribus in Ītaliā contendēbat. 8. Cūr in plānitiei dēscenderātis, ō milites? 9. Dux noster hostēs vicerat quod socii auxilium miserant. 10. Hannibal cōpiās suās per (*through, over*) Alpēs dūxit.

B. 1. The Romans have bought a great number of carts. 2. If you conquer (R. 40, p. 80) all will praise you. 3. The allies had sent many hostages into camp. 4. The little boy had written a letter to [his] mother. 5. The forces of Hannibal were hastening into Italy. 6. They had covered the bones with earth. 7. The farmers fear the evils of war because the army has descended into the plain. 8. The Gauls were holding themselves in the camp because Cæsar's forces had hastened into Gaul. 9. The inhabitants have sent a great quantity of wine to the soldiers. 10. Why have you shut the gates of the city, O foolish citizens?

EXERCISE 57.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of regō.

Rule 43.—Four verbs drop the -e of the imperative singular, viz.: *dicō*, to say; *dūcō*, to lead; *faciō*¹ to make; *ferō*,² to carry. The imperative singular is therefore *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*.

¹ Some verbs of the third conjugation have -tō in the 1st person. These will be explained later.

² A very irregular verb, to be explained later.

Vivā vōce :—

let us buy	shut	that he might conquer
let us read	hasten	that we may defend
let us shut	buy	that they may buy
let him shut	do not say	that they might read
let him conquer	do not write	that thou mayst write
let him defend	do not send	that you may conquer

A. 1. Dūcāmus cōpiās nostrās in Galliam citeriōrem. 2. Dīo mihi nōmina comitum tuōrum. 3. Caesar cōpiās in Italiā dūxit; ibi castra posuit. 4. Pōnāmus praesidia ut urbem dēfendāmus. 5. Dux militēs in urbem miserat ut frūmentum emerent. 6. Instruite aciem, militēs, nē hostēs nōs vincant. 7. Nē scripseris epistolam longam ad mātrem. 8. Caesar cum Gallis bellum gerēbat. 9. Cōsul cōpiās convocat ut auxilium ad sociōs mittat. 10. Pōnite praesidia ad (at) portās urbis.

B. 1. Let us buy a large quantity of corn. 2. The soldiers were filling the ditch with water that they might defend the city. 3. He sends the army into Gaul that it may wage war. 4. Read good books, boys. 5. We shall hasten into Africa that we may buy corn. 6. O great consul, lead the army into Italy. 7. For many years (R. 14 (b), p. 36) the Romans were waging war in Gaul. 8. Cover the boy with a new garment. 9. Send foot-soldiers that they may defend the city. 10. Caesar often waged war; he conquered many nations.

EXERCISE 58.

On the Indicative of audiō.

Vivā vōce :—

he is punishing	he has fortified	he will end
they will punish	we shall fortify	he has ended
we had punished	they will fortify	you were ending
thou wast punishing	they had fortified	I had ended
I shall have punished	they will have fortified	they end
they punish	thou wast fortifying	we have ended

A. 1. Vallō fossāque hostēs castra mūnīverunt. 2. Puerī senis verba audiēbant. 3. Lēgēs scelera improbōrum virōrum pūnient. 4. Patrēs filiōs magnā cūrā erudiverant. 5. Urbem altō mūrō mūniēbāmus. 6. Mors omnēs labōrēs finiet. 7. Si peditēs obsidēs male custōdiverint, dux culpābit. 8. Decimō annō cōsul bellum finivit. 9. Iam castra mūniverāmus ; iam praesidia posuerāmus. 10. Frūmentum custōdiunt quod impetum hostium timent.

B. 1. The boys were hastening into the wood because they had heard the sweet voice of the bird. 2. The Gauls had fortified the town with a rampart. 3. Why are you not guarding the hostages ? 4. We shall train our children with great care. 5. The master was punishing the pupils because they wrote badly. 6. If you punish the boy he will write better (*melius*). 7. Who will hear the speech of Claudius ? 8. They were finishing [their] labours. 9. They were punishing the slaves because they had guarded the hostages badly. 10. If you fortify the camp the enemy will not draw up the line of battle.

EXERCISE 59.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of audiō.

Vivā vōce :—

he is coming	I may come	they have bound
they were coming	he might come	we are binding
I shall come	we may come	they will bind
he has come	come (plural)	let us bind
we had come	do not come	let us not bind
they will have come	he might have come	we had bound

A. 1. Venī ad mē statim. 2. Decimō diē cōpiā nostrae in finēs Gallōrum pervēnerant. 3. Post pugnam occisōs (R. 15, p. 41) dux sepelīvit. 4. Mīlitēs conveniēbant ut bellum finirent. 5. Venite in templum, comitēs. 6. Nē corpora in urbe sepeliveritis. 7. Catēnās parābit ut captīvōs vinciat. 8. Labōrēmus ut corpora nostra nūtriāmus. 9. Patrēs liberōs bene nūtriant ? 10. Lēgātī ad Caesarem ante noctem vērunt.

B. 1. Do not come to us by night (R. 14, p. 31). 2. Tomorrow we shall arrive in ¹ Italy. 3. After the fight our [men] bound the captives with chains. 4. They had bound the hostages in the sight of all. 5. The allies were burying the slain in the wood. 6. If he comes to Cæsar, let him come immediately. 7. I was working that I might nourish my body. 8. We are guarding the hostages well that the leader may not punish us. 9. Before the fight the leader said many [things] to our men. 10. Train your mind ; nourish your body.

THE INFINITIVE.

64.—The Latin infinitive being a verb noun may be used (a) as subject or (b) as object of a verb.

- (a) To praise is pleasanter *Laudāre* quam culpāre iū-
 than to blame cundius est
- (b) The soldier prepares to *Miles pugnāre* parat
 fight

If it is the infinitive of a transitive verb it can have an object. He prepares to plough the field. *Agrum arāre* parat.

EXERCISE 60.

On the Infinitives of the four Conjugations.

Rule 44.—*To walk is pleasant* means *To walk is a pleasant (thing)*. The infinitive, used as a noun, is always neuter.

Vivā vōce. Say with English the infinitive, present and perfect, of the following verbs :—

<i>rēgnō</i>	<i>vastō</i>	<i>doceō</i>	<i>regō</i>	<i>vincō</i>	<i>audiō</i>
<i>intrō</i>	<i>praebeō</i>	<i>moveō</i>	<i>mittō</i>	<i>custodiō</i>	<i>sepeliō</i>

A. 1. *Pugnāre* prō^f (= *for*) *patriā* est pulchrum. 2. *Rēx exercitum dūcere* in *Ītaliā* statuit. 3. *Post pugnam* dux

¹ This means motion towards (R. 7, p. 12, footnote).

corpora sepelire parābat. 4. Militibus est turpe captivōs male custōdivisse. 5. Erat difficillimum Gallōs superāre. 6. Galli multōs carrōs emere statuerant. 7. Socii statuunt auxilium ad Rōmānōs mittere. 8. Exemplum bonum praebēre est difficile. 9. Ambulāre in silvis iucundissimum est. 10. Vōcēs puellārum audire est dulce.

B. 1. It is not easy to rule well. 2. To walk in summer delights boys. 3. To plough the land is useful. 4. It is difficult to write well. 5. The leader decides to send hostages. 6. The soldier prepares to set free the captives. 7. It is disgraceful not to have obeyed [one's] parents. 8. Soldiers like (= love) to fight vigorously. 9. To have gold is very pleasant. 10. To have said wise words is always useful.

65. The infinitive continued.

Rule 45.—After verbs of asking, commanding, advising and striving the English infinitive is translated by *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive.

I ask the boy to read Puerum rogō *ut* legat
He asked the boy not to hasten Puerum rogāvit *nē* festināret

The reason for this is that in such cases the English infinitive expresses **purpose**. I ask you to come means I ask you so that you may come.

The following rhyme is useful :—

With ask, command, advise and strive
By *ut* translate infinitive.

65 (a). The tense (see § 59 and R. 35-36, p. 66), number and person of the subjunctive used can always be ascertained by turning the phrase in English before translating. Thus :—

I ask him to come , = I ask him that he may come
He asked me to come = He asked me that I might come
He asked us to come , = He asked us that we might come

In Latin the infinitive is never used to express a purpose.

66. The commonest verbs which take *ut* or *nē* and subjunctive are :—

<i>cūrāre</i> to take care	<i>imperāre</i> to give orders
<i>rogāre</i> to ask	<i>monēre</i> to advise
<i>ōrāre</i> to beg	<i>persuādēre</i> to persuade ¹

With *imperō* and *persuādēō* the person is put in the dative. The other verbs of this list govern an accusative.

EXERCISE 61.

Vivā voce. Turn as in § 65 (a), p. 89, and translate :—

he asks me to hasten	I beg the boy not to weep
he asked me to hasten	I begged the boy not to weep
he asks them to hasten	they beg us not to weep
he asked them to hasten	they begged us not to weep
he asks us to hasten	they beg you not to weep
he asked us to hasten	they begged you not to weep

A. 1. Rēx militem monet ut captīvōs bene custōdiat.² 2. Miles medicum ōrābat ut vulnus sārāret. 3. Nōs monēbit nē nocte urbem intrēmus. 4. Socii dux imperāvit ut auxilium mitterent. 5. Mē ōrat ut senī pecūniam dem. 6. Cūrāte, militēs, ut castra mūniātis. 7. Puerī cūrābant ut vitia vitārent. 8. Nōbīs persuādet nē aciem instruāmus. 9. Quis mē monet nē urbem dēfendam? 10. Ōrā puerum nē mātři displiceat.

B. 1. He gives orders to the allies to hold the island. 2. The children beg the doctor to heal [their] mother. 3. My mother was asking me not to write badly. 4. The citizens are begging the general not to destroy the town. 5. They advise us to fight vigorously. 6. I beg you not to blame me. 7. Advise the soldiers to obey the leader. 8. He orders the

¹ In the sense of persuading a person to do a thing. When *persuādēō* means to *persuade, convince that*, it takes the accusative and infinitive.

² This and similar sentences should first be translated literally and then be turned into a phrase with an infinitive, as in § 45 (a).

soldiers to bury the dead. 9. We advise you to read good books. 10. Let us beg the father to train the boy with very great care.

PRESENT AND FUTURE PARTICIPLES.

67. The English present participle ends in *-ing*; *working, walking*. It is frequently used with the verb *to be* to form the continuous tenses, R. 26, p. 61, *e.g., he is ploughing*. This is never so in Latin, and the student must be careful to translate *he is ploughing* by *he ploughs, arat*.

Rule 46.—The Latin present participle is derived from the present-stem by the changes shown in the following table :—

1st	amō	amā-ns, -ntis	<i>loving</i>
2nd	moneō	monē-ns, -ntis	<i>advising</i>
*3rd	regō	reg-ēns, -ntis	<i>ruling</i>
4th	audiō	audi-ēns, -ntis	<i>hearing</i>

Rule 47.—The Latin present participle used as an adjective is declined ¹ like *prūdēns*, § 33, p. 38, *i.e.*, ablative *-ī*, genitive plural *-ium*, neuter plural *-ia*. It must agree with the word referred to in number, gender and case.

Who did not hear the shouts of Quis clāmōrēs Gallōrum, for-
the Gauls fighting ² bravely? tissimē pugnantium, nōn
audīvit?

Rule 48.—The Latin future participle is derived from the supine-stem, § 54, p. 60, by changing the *-m* into *-rus*. It is an adjective of three terminations, declined like *bonus*. It agrees in number, gender and case with the word referred to.

1st	amō	amāt-um	amāt-ūrus	<i>about to love</i>
2nd	moneō	monit-um	monit-ūrus	<i>about to advise</i>
3rd	regō	rēct-um	rēct-ūrus	<i>about to rule</i>
4th	audiō	audīt-um	audīt-ūrus	<i>about to hear</i>

¹ But when the present participle is used in the ablative absolute (to be explained later), or when used as a noun, *e.g.*, & sapiente, by a philosopher, the ablative ends in *-e*.

² The present participle can be used in this sentence because "fighting" means "while they were fighting."

To the slave about-to-fight the leader gives a sword	Servō pugnātūrō dux gladium dat
They are about-to-carry the gold into the temple	Aurum in templum portātūri sunt

Rule 49.—Unlike the present participle, the **future participle** is often used with the verb *to be* to form a *tense*¹ referring to the immediate future.

The girl is about to give a flower to her sister.	Puella sorōri flōrem datūra est
--	---------------------------------

EXERCISE 62.

(1) Say with English the *nominative singular* and *plural* and the *genitive singular* and *plural* of the present participle of :—

ambulō	praebeō	dicō	custōdiō
vastō	dēleō	tegō	mūniō
vulnerō	fleō	mittō	sepeliō
intrō	doceō	legō	vinciō

(2) Say the supine and then the future participle of the following verbs :—

mōnstrō	praebeō	dūcō	finiō
culpō	dēleō	scribō	veniō
arō	moveō	mittō	sepeliō
dō	doceō	gerō	nūtriō

(3) Say what words the italicised participles agree with, state the number, gender and case and then translate the participles.

1. The boy, *hearing* the noise, runs into the wood.
2. The boys, *hearing* the noise, run into the wood.
3. To the boys, *hearing* the noise, their companion shows the way.
4. He praises the woman *showing* the way.
5. He praises the women *showing* the way.
6. The soldiers, *about-to-enter* the city, prepare arms.
7. The girl, *about-to-walk* in the garden, has a cloak.
8. Who does not see the girl *about-to-walk* in the garden?
9. Who does not see the girls *about-to-walk* in the garden?
10. They are terrified by the soldiers *about-to-ravage* the land.

¹ Tenses so formed are sometimes called an active periphrastic conjugation.

EXERCISE 63.

Rule 50.—Present and future participles are often used to translate an English clause or sentence.

The consul hears the soldiers [who Militēs, victōriam nūnti-
are] announcing the victory antēs, cōsul audit

* * Before translating, pick out the participles and find, by the ending, what words they agree with.

A. 1. Nēmō pugnantium (R. 15, p. 41) ducem culpat. 2. Scīpiō, Carthāginem dēlētūrus, in Āfricam festinābat. 3. Militī, victōriam nūntiantī, laudem magnam rēx dedit. 4. Puellae rosās parātūrae sunt. 5. Gallōs, strēnuē pignantēs, Rōmāni vicērunt. 6. Videt hostēs, patriam vastantēs. 7. Clāmōrēs militum, captīvōs vincientium, ad aurēs nostrās perveniunt. 8. Rēgi, auxilium Rōmānīs praebitūrō, agricolae frūmentum dant. 9. Magnus est dolor militum, comitēs sepelientium. 10. Socii, bellum gestūris, rēx auxilium praebet.

* * Before translating pick out each participle and say what word it agrees with (R. 47-48, p. 91).

Imitate the order of words in Rule 47.

B. 1. The Greeks left a wooden horse standing on (= in) the shore. 2. Soldiers always praise a leader fighting bravely. 3. The allies, about-to-send help, prepare corn. 4. The leader, [while] drawing up the line of battle, relates the deeds of brave [men]. 5. The Gauls are about to ravage our lands. 6. To the consul, about to wage war, the Romans give great forces. 7. We have heard the names of the soldiers [who are] conquering the Gauls. 8. To the girl obeying her mother (R. 41, p. 82) we give a reward. 9. The leader was about-to-bind the captives. 10. Take-care-of (cūrāte¹) the children of [those] defending the city.

¹ Cūrāre, to take care of, to mind, governs the accusative.

The verb sum,¹ I am.

sum, esse, fu-i, fut-ūrus, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*sum, I am
es, thou art
est, he is
sumus, we are
estis, you are
sunt, they are*

PERFECT.

*fu-i, I have been or I was
fu-isti, thou hast been or wast
fu-it, he has been or was
fu-imus, we have been or were
fu-istis, you have been or were
fu-erunt or } they have been or were
fu-ere*

IMPERFECT.

*eram, I was
erās, thou wast
erat, he was
erāmus, we were
erātis, you were
erant, they were*

PLUPERFECT.

*fu-eram, I had been
fu-erās, thou hadst been
fu-erat, he had been
fu-erāmus, we had been
fu-erātis, you had been
fu-erant, they had been*

FUTURE.

*erō, I shall be
eris, thou wilt be
erit, he will be
erimus, we shall be
eritis, you will be
erunt, they will be*

FUTURE PERFECT.

*fu-erō, I shall have been
fu-eris, thou wilt have been
fu-erit, he will have been
fu-erimus, we shall have been
fu-eritis, you will have been
fu-erint, they will have been*

¹ This verb is formed from two roots: *es-*, to be, and *fu-*, to be or become.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

sim, I may be
sis, thou mayst be
sit, he may be
simus, we may be
sitis, you may be
sint, they may be

PERFECT.

fu-erim, I may have been
fu-eris, thou mayst have been
fu-erit, he may have been
fu-erimus, we may have been
fu-eritis, you may have been
fu-erint, they may have been

IMPERFECT.

*essem or forem, I might * be*
essēs or forēs, thou mightest be
esset or foret, he might be
essēmus or forēmus, we might be
essētis or forētis, you might be
essent or forent, they might be

PLUPERFECT.

fu-issem, I should have been
fu-issēs, thou wouldst have been
fu-isset, he would have been
fu-issēmus, we should have been
fu-issētis, you would have been
fu-issent, they would have been

Or should.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

es, be thou
este, be ye

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

estō, be thou
estō, let him be
estōte, be ye
suntō, let them be

INFINITIVE MOOD AND PARTICIPLES.

Infinitive Present. *esse, to be*
 „ Perfect *fu-isse, to have been*
 „ Future *fut-ūrus esse or fore, to be about to be*
 Participle Future. *fut-ūrus, -a, -ūm, about to be*

There is no present participle, but some compounds of *sum* have present participles : *e.g., absēns. praesēns.*

EXERCISE 64.

On the Indicative of sum.

Rule 51.—The verb **to be** takes the same case after it as before it when the same thing is meant (see § 20 (c), p. 15).

The men are sailors *Viri sunt nautae*

A. 1. *Senum cantus* : Nōs fuimus olim iuvenēs, fortēs et audācēs. 2. *Cantus iuvenum* : Nōs sumus hodiē iuvenēs et fortēs, nōs prō (*for*) patriā pugnābimus. 3. *Cantus puerōrum* : Teneri sumus ; mox fortēs erimus et pugnābimus sicut (*like*) patrēs nostrī. 4. *Fuerat dux equitum*. 5. Eō tempore in Italiā erāmus. 6. *Tua cōsilia reipublicae ūtilia erunt*. 7. *Si fortēs eritis, victōrēs eritis*. 8. *Semper felicēs, amīci,*¹ *fuistis*. 9. *Incolae insulae fuerant nautae*. 10. *Nostra erit victōria si fuerimus fortēs*.

B. 1. The father was a sailor. 2. In that year the consuls were Claudius and his brother. 3. We shall be happy if you are happy. 4. The boy has always been bold. 5. We had been in Italy many years (R. 14 (b), p. 36). 6. If the boys are happy the mothers will be glad. 7. Soon we shall be in Italy. 8. You, [when] boys, had been strong and bold. 9. Never had my soldiers been timid. 10. We were the guardians of the gold.

Rule 52.¹—When the subject consists of two or more nouns, or two or more pronouns, or a noun and a pronoun joined by *and*, the verb is plural.

The dog and the horse are *Canis et equus hominibus*
useful to men *sunt ūtilēs*

Rule 53.¹—If a Composite Subject (*i.e.*, two or more nouns or two or more pronouns; Or nouns and pronouns joined by *and*)

¹ These two rules are just the same in English. We say *He and I are (i.e., we are) in the garden.*

comprises different persons, the verb is plural and agrees in person with the 1st person rather than with the 2nd and with the 2nd person rather than with the 3rd.

You and I (*we*) are glad Ego et tū laetī sumus

Rule 54.—Order of Persons.—In Latin the 1st person stands before the 2nd or 3rd; the 2nd stands before the 3rd, *i.e.*, pronouns and nouns stand in the order of their person.¹

You and I	Ego et tū
My king and I	Ego et rēx meus

EXERCISE 65.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of sum.

A. 1. Tū et frāter tuus estis in hortō; ego et soror mea sumus in templō. 2. Ō puerī, este semper fidēlēs. 3. Es fortis ut victor sis. 4. Vir et eius filius fuerant ūtilissimī civitātī. 5. Nē fueris (R. 37 (c), p. 68) irācundus, ō dux. 6. Cōsulis cōnsilia erant sapientia ut ūtilia civitātī essent. 7. Ego contentus sum ut laetus sim. 8. Pugnāte strēnuē nē bellum longum sit. 9. Lēgēs suntō iūstae. 10. Este testēs meae cōstantiae.

B. 1. Let (R. 37 (d), p. 68) the weapons be sharp. 2. My father and I were always faithful to our friends. 3. Be diligent that your parents may be glad. 4. You and I shall be unhappy if our friends are in danger. 5. Be contented with few things (*rēs*) that you may be happy. 6. Do not be foolish, boys. 7. The old man had always been faithful that his memory might be pleasant to the citizens. 8. Citizens must be faithful. 9. Do not be unhappy, friends; be glad. 10. My friend and I had been in Italy.

¹ English, out of politeness, makes the speaker put himself last.

SECOND CONJUGATION : E-STEMS—PASSIVE VOICÉ.

moneor, monēri, monitus sum, to be advised.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

mone-or, *I am advised*
 monē-ris, *thou art advised*
 monē-tur, *he is advised*
 monē-mur, *we are advised*
 monē-mini, *you are advised*
 mone-ntur, *they are advised*

IMPERFECT.

monē-bar, *I was being advised*
 monē-bāris or monē-bāre, *thou wast being advised*
 monē-bātur, *he was being advised*
 monē-bāmur, *we were being advised*
 monē-bāmini, *you were being advised*
 monē-bantur, *they were being advised*

FUTURE.

monē-bo, *I shall be advised*
 monē-beris or monē-bere, *thou wilt be advised*
 monē-bitur, *he will be advised*
 monē-bimur, *we shall be advised*
 monē-bimini, *you will be advised*
 monē-buntur, *they will be advised*

PERFECT.

monit-us sum, *I have been advised or was advised*
 monit-us es, *thou hast been advised or wast advised*
 monit-us est, *he has been advised or was advised*
 monit-i sumus, *we have been advised or were advised*
 monit-i estis, *you have been advised or were advised*
 monit-i sunt, *they have been advised or were advised*

PLUPERFECT.

monit-us eram, *I had been advised*
 monit-us erās, *thou hadst been advised*
 monit-us erat, *he had been advised*
 monit-i erāmus, *we had been advised*
 monit-i erātis, *you had been advised*
 monit-i erant, *they had been advised*

FUTURE PERFECT.

monit-us erō, *I shall have been advised*
 monit-us eris, *thou wilt have been advised*
 monit-us erit, *he will have been advised*
 monit-i erimus, *we shall have been advised*
 monit-i eritis, *you will have been advised*
 monit-i erunt, *they will have been advised*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

monē-ar, *I may be advised*
 monē-āris or monē-āre, *thou mayest be advised*
 monē-ātur, *he may be advised*
 monē-āmur, *we may be advised*
 monē-āmini, *you may be advised*
 monē-antur, *they may be advised*

IMPERFECT.

monē-rer, *I might (or should) be advised*
 monē-rēris or monē-rēre, *thou mightest be advised*
 monē-rētur, *he might be advised*
 monē-rēmur, *we might be advised*
 monē-rēmini, *you might be advised*
 monē-rentur, *they might be advised*

PRESENT.

monē-re, *be thou advised*
 monē-mini, *be ye advised*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. monē-ri, *to be advised*
 Perf. monit-us esse, *to have been advised*
 Fut. monit-um iri, *to be about to be advised*

PERFECT.

monit-us sim, *I may have been advised*
 monit-us sis, *thou mayest have been advised*
 monit-us sit, *he may have been advised*
 monit-i simus, *we may have been advised*
 monit-i sitis, *you may have been advised*
 monit-i sint, *they may have been advised*

PLUPERFECT.

monit-us essem, *I might have been advised*
 monit-us esēs, *thou mightest have been advised*
 monit-us esset, *he might have been advised*
 monit-i essemus, *we might have been advised*
 monit-i essētis, *you might have been advised*
 monit-i essent, *they might have been advised*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

monē-tor, *be thou advised*
 monē-tor, *let him be advised*
 monē-ntor, *let them be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

Perfect. monit-us, -a, -um, *advised or having been advised*
 GERUNDIVE.
 mone-n-dus, -a, -um, *fit to be advised*

THIRD CONJUGATION : CONSONANT (AND U) STEMS—PASSIVE VOICE.

regō, regi, rēctus sum, to be ruled.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

reg-or, I am ruled
 reg-eris, thou art ruled
 reg-itur, he is ruled
 reg-imur, we are ruled
 reg-imini, you are ruled
 reg-untur, they are ruled

IMPERFECT.

reg-ēbar, I was being ruled
 reg-ēbāris or reg-ēbāre, thou wast being ruled
 reg-ēbātur, he was being ruled
 reg-ēbāmŭr, we were being ruled
 reg-ēbāmini, you were being ruled
 reg-ēbantur, they were being ruled

FUTURE.

reg-ar, I shall be ruled
 reg-ēris or reg-ēre, thou wilt be ruled
 reg-ētur, he will be ruled
 reg-ēmur, we shall be ruled
 reg-ēmini, you will be ruled
 reg-entur, they will be ruled

PERFECT.

rēct-us sum, I have been ruled or was ruled
 rēct-us es, thou hast been ruled or wast ruled
 rēct-us est, he has been ruled or was ruled
 rēct-i sumus, we have been ruled or were ruled
 rēct-i estis, you have been ruled or were ruled
 rēct-i sunt, they have been ruled or were ruled

PLUPERFECT.

rēct-us eram, I had been ruled
 rēct-us erās, thou hadst been ruled
 rēct-us erat, he had been ruled
 rēct-i erāmus, we had been ruled
 rēct-i erātis, you had been ruled
 rēct-i erant, they had been ruled

FUTURE PERFECT.

rēct-us erō, I shall have been ruled
 rēct-us eris, thou wilt have been ruled
 rēct-us erit, he will have been ruled
 rēct-i erimus, we shall have been ruled
 rēct-i eritis, you will have been ruled
 rēct-i erunt, they will have been ruled

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

reg-ar, *I may be ruled*
 reg-āris or reg-āre, *thou mayst be ruled*
 reg-ātur, *he may be ruled*
 reg-āmur, *we may be ruled*
 reg-āmini, *you may be ruled*
 reg-antur, *they may be ruled*

IMPERFECT.

rege-ter, *I might be ruled*
 rege-rēris or rege-rēre, *thou mightest be ruled*
 rege-rētur, *he might be ruled*
 rege-rēmur, *we might be ruled*
 rege-rēmini, *you might be ruled*
 rege-rentur, *they might be ruled*

PRESENT.

reg-ere, *be thou ruled*
 reg-imini, *be ye ruled*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. reg-i, *to be ruled*
 Perf. rēct-us esse, *to have been ruled*
 Fut. rēct-um iri, *to be about to be ruled*

PERFECT.

rēct-us sim, *I may have been ruled*
 rēct-us sis, *thou mayst have been ruled*
 rēct-us sit, *he may have been ruled*
 rēct-i simus, *we may have been ruled*
 rēct-i sitis, *you may have been ruled*
 rēct-i sint, *they may have been ruled*

PLUPERFECT.

rēct-us essem, *I should (or might) have been ruled*
 rēct-us essēs, *thou wouldst have been ruled*
 rēct-us esset, *he would have been ruled*
 rēct-i essemus, *we should have been ruled*
 rēct-i essētis, *you would have been ruled*
 rēct-i essent, *they would have been ruled*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE.

reg-itor, *be thou ruled*
 reg-itor, *let him be ruled*
 reg-untor, *let them be ruled*

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect. rēct-us, -a, -um, *ruled or having been ruled*

GERUNDIVE.

reg-endus, -a, -um, *fit to be ruled*

FOURTH CONJUGATION : I-STEMS—PASSIVE VOICE.

audi-or, audi-ri, audit-us sum, to be heard.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

audi-or, I am heard
 audi-ris, thou art heard
 audi-tur, he is heard
 audi-mur, we are heard
 audi-minī, you are heard
 audi-untur, they are heard

IMPERFECT.

audi-ēbar, I was being heard
 audi-ēbāris or audi-ēbare, thou wast being heard
 audi-ēbātur, he was being heard
 audi-ēbāmur, we were being heard
 audi-ēbāminī, you were being heard
 audi-ēbantur, they were being heard

FUTURE.

audi-ar, I shall be heard
 audi-ēris or audi-ēre, thou wilt be heard
 audi-ētur, he will be heard
 audi-ēmur, we shall be heard
 audi-ēminī, you will be heard
 audi-ēntur, they will be heard

PERFECT.

audit-us sum, I have been heard or was heard
 audit-us es, thou hast been heard or wast heard
 audit-us est, he has been heard or was heard
 audit-i sumus, we have been heard or were heard
 audit-i estis, you have been heard or were heard
 audit-i sunt, they have been heard or were heard

PLUPERFECT.

audit-us eram, I had been heard
 audit-us erās, thou hadst been heard
 audit-us erat, he had been heard
 audit-i erāmus, we had been heard
 audit-i erātis, you had been heard
 audit-i erant, they had been heard

FUTURE PERFECT.

audit-us erō, I shall have been heard
 audit-us eris, thou wilt have been heard
 audit-us erit, he will have been heard
 audit-i erimus, we shall have been heard
 audit-i eritis, you will have been heard
 audit-i erunt, they will have been heard

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

audi-ar, *I may be heard*
audi-āris or **audiāre**, *thou mayst be heard*
audi-ātūr, *he may be heard*
audi-āmur, *we may be heard*
audi-āminī, *you may be heard*
audi-antur, *they may be heard*

IMPERFECT.

audi-rer, *I might be heard*
audi-rēris or **audi-rēre**, *thou mightest be heard*
audi-rētūr, *he might be heard*
audi-rēmur, *we might be heard*
audi-rēminī, *you might be heard*
audi-rentur, *they might be heard*

PRESENT.

audi-re, *be thou heard*
audi-minī, *be ye heard*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. audi-rī, *to be heard*
Perf. audit-us esse, *to have been heard*
Fut. audit-um iri, *to be about to be heard*

PERFECT.

audit-us sim, *I may have been heard*
audit-us sis, *thou mayst have been heard*
audit-us sit, *he may have been heard*
audit-i simus, *we may have been heard*
audit-i sitis, *you may have been heard*
audit-i sint, *they may have been heard*

PLUPERFECT.

audit-us essem, *I should (or might) have been heard*
audit-us esses, *thou wouldst have been heard*
audit-us esset, *he would have been heard*
audit-i essemus, *we should have been heard*
audit-i essetis, *you would have been heard*
audit-i essent, *they would have been heard*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

audi-tor, *thou must be heard*
audi-tor, *he must be heard*
audi-untor, *they must be heard*

PARTICIPLE.

Perfect. audit-us, -a, -um, *heard or having been heard*

GERUNDIVE.

audi-endus, -a, -um, *fit to be heard*

68. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE.¹

(a) Active. The farmer ploughs the land.

(b) Passive. The land is ploughed by the farmer.

When the Verb shows what the Subject of the Verb is or does it is said to be in the active voice.

When the Verb shows what is done to the Subject of the Verb it is said to be in the passive ² voice.

Rule 55.—The Latin present tense of the passive means that the action is still going on, not completed. Thus—

Puer laudātur = the boy is being praised.

Similarly the imperfect *laudābatur* means that the action was going on, not completed, at a given past time, i.e., he was being praised.

69. In translating into Latin care must be taken to ascertain the exact meaning. *The letter is written* means *the letter has been written*, and it must be translated by the Latin perfect (R. 57, note, p. 107).

EXERCISE 66.

On the Present, Imperfect and Future of amor.

Vivā vōce :—

we are being praised	they are being shown
they will be praised	you will be carried
he was being blamed	they are being ploughed
you are being blamed	they will be ploughed
it is being given	we were being overcome
it will be given	thou art being overcome
thou wilt be adorned	you will be delighted
thou art being adorned	you are being delighted

A. 1. Cōnsilia parantur ; militēs convocantur. 2. Vōs, o filiae, ā mātribus ōrnābimini. 3. Dum rēgis agrī arantur, agricolae terra vastabātur. 4. Si bellum erit civēs ad arma

¹ Some grammarians only apply the term active to transitive verbs. They then speak of intransitive verbs as being neuter.

² Passive means suffering, from the Latin *patior* = to suffer.

vocābuntur. 5. Tū, fili, cottidiē ā magistrīs culpāris. 6. Multum frūmentī (R. 22, p. 53) cīvibus dabitur. 7. Virī periculis magnīs sapientiā liberantur. 8. Obsidēs ā Gallīs Cæsari dabuntur. 9. Nōs flōribus dēlectābāmur, vōs ab equīs dēlectābāminī. 10. Nōs superābimur quod via hostibus mōnstrātur.

B. 1. Soon the victory will be announced to the Romans. 2. The flowers were being carried into the temple. 3. Why are you not being called together, citizens? 4. While you were praised I was blamed. 5. The Gauls will be overcome; their lands will be ravaged. 6. Great forces are being given to the consul. 7. The fields of good husbandmen are ploughed in winter. 8. You, Claudius, were blamed because our plans were being announced to the enemy. 9. Swords are being given to the slaves. 10. You, O Gauls, will be overcome by (R. 13, p. 29) the Romans, your towns will be given to the victors.

Rule 56.—The Latin perfect participle passive is obtained by changing the *-m* of the supine ¹ into *-s*.

PRES. TENSE. SUPINE. PERF. PART.

am-ō	am-ātum	am-ātus	<i>having been loved</i>
culp-ō	culp-ātum	culp-ātus	<i>having been blamed</i>

Verbs for practice: Give the supine and perfect participle (with meaning) of laudō, vulnerō, vastō, arō, dēlectō, ōrnō, mōnstrō, superō, portō, convocō, parō, nūntiō.

Rule 57.—The perfect tenses of the passive voice are made up of the perfect participle and the verb *sum*.

70. The perfect participle is an adjective like *bonus*, and it must always agree in gender, number and case with the word it refers to.

¹ § 54, p. 60. The supine of first conjugation verbs is obtained by changing the *-ō* of the 1st person into *-ātum*; am-ō, am-ātum; culp-ō, culp-ātum.

SINGULAR.

Puer amātus est
 Puella amāta est
 Cōnsilium laudātum est

PLURAL.

Pueri amātī sunt
 Puellae amātae sunt
 Cōnsilia laudāta sunt.

NOTE.—*The letter has been written*, means that the writing is completed. If we say the letter *is written* it means the letter *has been written*; and just as the active perfect scripsit means he *has written* or he *wrote*, so the passive perfect means *has been* or *was written*.

Epistola scripta est ¹

The letter has been written or was written

EXERCISE 67.

On the Perfect Tenses of amor.

Vivā vōce :—

the woman has been praised	we shall have been set free
the women have been praised	it had been avoided
the boy had been praised	they (neut.) had been
the boys had been praised	avoided
the word has been praised	we have been called
the words have been praised	he was blamed
the lands will have been ravaged	we were overcome
the girl had been adorned	it was announced
I shall have been delighted	

A. 1. Statuae ā puellis ōrnātae erant. 2. Si superātī erimus, socii nostrī superābuntur. 3. Multa mala rēgis sapientiā vitāta erant. 4. Nostrī agrī vastātī sunt; nostrī socii superātī (sunt). 5. Iter hostibus ā servō mōnstrātum erat. 6. Oppida aedificāta sunt; agrī arātī (sunt). 7. Exercitus superābātur quod eius dux vulnerātus erat. 8. Mox aurum in urbem portātum erit. 9. Magnae cōpiae cōsulī datae sunt. 10. Tū, ō fili, ā magistrō laudātus es.

B. 1. Corn had been given to the allies by the consul. 2. In winter the land was ploughed, in summer the corn was carried into the city. 3. If the soldiers are called together

¹ Sometimes the perfect participle passive is used, with or without the verb *to be*, purely as an adjective, e.g., doctus, *learned*; parātus, *ready*. Ex. 59, A. 3, p. 87.

(R. 40, p. 80) we shall not be overcome. 4. In that battle the consuls had been wounded. 5. The temple was adorned with many flowers. 6. The matter (= *rēs*) has been announced to the consuls. 7. We have been called together, friends, because the state is in great danger. 8. Why were you blamed, foolish boys? 9. They were carried into the house by the sailors. 10. The dangers had been avoided by wise plans.

Rule 58.—The perfect participle passive is often used as an ordinary adjective, without the verb *sum*, to describe or distinguish a noun with which it must agree in *number*, *gender* and *case*.

Girls, adorned with flowers,	Puellae, floribus ornatae,
were carrying the statue into	statuam in templum por-
the temple	tabant

NOTE.—Order of words.—In phrases like *adorned with flowers* place the participle at the end of the phrase, and place the whole phrase immediately after the word it qualifies.

Rule 59.—A participle used in this way very often corresponds to a complete clause or sentence in English.

The citizens of the city which-	Civēs urbis expugnatae in
had-been-stormed were in	magnō periculō erant
great danger	

Here *which-had-been-stormed* is equivalent to *stormed*.

EXERCISE 68.

A. State what nouns the following participles refer to, giving number, gender and case :—

1. The soldiers, *wounded* by the spears of the enemy, were carried into the camp. 2. To the soldiers *wounded* in that battle Cæsar gave money. 3. The names of the soldiers *wounded* in that battle are known to us. 4. The corn, *prepared* by the farmer, was given to the soldier.

Turn the clauses in *italics* into participles :—

5. All praise the girls *who-are-adorned with flowers*. 6. They give rewards to the soldiers *who-have-been-called-together*.

7. The enemy destroyed the city *when-it-had-been-stormed*.
8. To the slaves *who-had-been-set-free* the masters gave horses.
9. The memory of dangers *which-have-been-avoided* is pleasant.
10. He praises the house *which-has-been-built* by the slaves.

B. Translate the above into Latin.

EXERCISE 69.

On the whole of amor.

A. 1. Galli, ā Rōmānīs superātī, obsidēs Caesarī dant. 2. Date frūmentum nē vestrī agrī vastentur. 3. Laudā aliōs (*others*) ut ipse (*you, yourself*) laudēris. 4. Dux cūrābat ut frūmentum militibus darētur. 5. Arma parābāmus nē superārēmur. 6. Frūmentum, ab agricolā parātum, ducī mōnstrātum est. 7. Vōs, ō fēminae, timēbātis nē vulnerārēmini. 8. Festinābam nē culpārer. 9. Hastae militum, in eā pugnā vulnerātōrum, liberis datae sunt. 10. Dominus fabrōs laudāvit ut domus bene aedificētur (R. 36, p. 66).

B. 1. Let us prepare flowers that the temple may be adorned. 2. The leaders, called * together by the king, were hastening into the city. 3. The leader calls together the slaves *who-had-been-set-free*. 4. They prepared gold that it might be given to the consul. 5. The land, ploughed * in winter, will give (= offer) corn in summer. 6. The spear, pointed * out by the soldier, had wounded many [men]. 7. Do not be foolish that you may not be blamed. 8. I took care that the dangers might be avoided. 9. Boys, praised * by masters, will learn many things.

71. *.* A very common error is to mistake a perfect participle for a finite¹ verb. "Having been" can always be prefixed to a perfect participle passive. Thus, *called* means *having been called*.

¹ A finite verb is so called because it is limited by mood and person. The verb infinite, made up of the infinitives, participles, gerund, gerundive and supine is not so limited.

EXERCISE 70.

Second conjugation passive voice. Vocs. 51-54, pp. 136-137.

Vivā vōce. (1) Simple tenses :—

he is feared	we are being taught	they will be taught
we shall be feared	they will be taught	they will be destroyed
they were being	thou art taught	they will be terrified
feared	you are taught	they will be moved
I shall be feared	you may be taught	he may be moved
thou art feared	I might be taught	he may be restrained
they are feared		

(2) Perfect tenses. Give the perfect participles passive ¹ (R. 56, p. 107) of :—

placeō *	dēleō	noceō	doceō
displaceō *	moveō	fleō	teneō
pāreō *	compleō	praebeō	coerceō

(3) the boys have been advised	the camp had been moved
the girls have been advised	the camp will have been
I had been taught	moved
we had been taught	the city has been destroyed
the ditch has been filled	the town has been destroyed
the ditches have been filled	we shall have been frightened
	he may have been frightened

EXERCISE 71.

A. 1. Nocte pueri saepe terrentur. 2. Cūr nōn meīs lacrimis movēbāris, ō crūdēlissime? 3. Exercitus exercētur; mox pugnābit. 4. Sī crūdēlēs eritis, ab omnibus timēbimini. 5. Equus ligneus armatis viris complētus est. 6. Catō Rōmānōs admonēbat ut Carthāgō dēlērētur. 7. Monet ut pueri in armis exerceantur. 8. Nāvēs in portū tempestāte tentae erant. 9. Fossae aquā compleantur (R. 37 (4), p. 68). 10. Ducī, ā Rōmānīs superātō, auxiliū praebitum est.

¹ The supine must first be found from the parts of the verbs shown Vocs. 51-54, pp. 136-137; give the neuter only of those marked *.

B. 1. The foot-soldiers were terrified by the sudden attack of the horsemen. 2. Why are you terrified by the fear of death? 3. In Britain the bodies of boys are exercised daily. 4. The ditch has been filled with stones. 5. The queen had been moved by the tears of the old man. 6. The wooden horse, filled with soldiers, was the cause of destruction to the Trojans. 7. The wise will advise that the bodies of boys be exercised daily. 8. The slaves, terrified by the cruelty of the master, were hastening into the wood. 9. Towns have been destroyed, fields have been ravaged. 10. Help had been offered to the Gauls by their allies.

Rule 60.—Intransitive verbs which have the **dative** as their only object (R. 41, p. 82) can only be used **impersonally** in the passive.

The masters are obeyed by the boy must be turned **It-is-obeyed to the masters by the boy.**

The masters **are obeyed** by the boy **Magistris ā puerō pārētur**

The tree has been injured **Arbori nocitum est**

NOTE.—Impersonal Verbs have only the third person singular of each tense, an infinitive and a gerund. They do *not* have a *personal subject* in the nominative. If the verb is used in the perfect passive the participle is always *neuter*.

EXERCISE 72.

Vivā vōce :—

I am obeyed	we are pleased
we are obeyed	the mothers had been pleased
the mother will be obeyed	we were being pleased
the tree will be injured	the leader will be displeased
the trees have been injured	I had not been obeyed
the flowers were injured	they had been injured

A. 1. *Mulierēs flēbant quod urbs militibus complēta est.* 2. *Classis Rōmāna tempestāte in portū tenēbātur.* 3. *Omnēs vici*

Gallōrum dēlēti erant. 4. Tempestāte fructibus nocitum erat. 5. Nostri, mortis metū mōti, frumentum hostibus praebēbant. 6. Servi, minis territi, arma parant. 7. Si magistrō pāritum erit, pueri laudābuntur. 8. Admonē milites ut fossa lapidibus compleātur. 9. Ā Rōmānis Hannibal timēbātur; ab eō Italia vastābātur. 10. Nāvēs nostrae ab hostibus visae sunt.

B. 1. Let the treaties be kept by the allies. 2 Do not be terrified (R. 37 (c), p. 68) by angry words. 3. The wooden horse was seen on (= in) the beach. 4. The Trojans will not be terrified by the wooden horse filled ¹ with soldiers. 5. The good mother will be obeyed by her children. 6. Who will rebuild (= build) the city destroyed by the Romans? 7. The tree had been injured by the great tempest. 8. I advise that corn be offered to our allies. 9. He warned the Gauls that the camp might not be moved across the river. 10. If I am obeyed by you I shall be kind to you.

EXERCISE 73.

On regor (Vocab. 55-57, pp. 137-138).

Vivā vōce :—

(1) he is being sent	he is being covered
it is being written	we may be covered
they were being written	it will be defended
you are being led	we shall be defended
you will be led	we may be defended
they will be led	they might be shut
thou art being conquered	
thou wilt be conquered	
you will be conquered	
you were being sent	
they might be sent	
he is being covered	

¹ What word does *filled* agree with? (§ 71, p. 110).

(2) Say the supine and then the perfect participle of the following verbs (R. 56, p. 107) :—

legō,	emō,	gerō,	claudō,	scribō,	pōnō
dūcō,	instruō,	vincō,	tegō,	dēfendō,	dicō

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| (3) we have been led | you may have been de- |
| we have been conquered | fended |
| they have been shut | they might have been led |
| thou hast been led | it had been drawn up |
| you had been covered | it had been waged |
| I shall have been defended | thou hadst been defended |
| | they will have been shut |
| (4) the city had been defended | war will have been waged |
| the cities had been defended | wars have been waged |
| corn has been bought | the gates have been shut |
| the letter has been written | laws had been read |
| the letters have been read | men had been sent |
| war had been waged | a letter had been sent |

Rule 61.—Cum, when, referring to present or future time takes the indicative.

Cum haec legēs, rēscribe *when you read (shall read) this send me a reply*

Referring to **past time cum** may take the **indicative** when it *merely* refers to contemporaneous past time, **cum** in urbe eram, frāter meus domī erat.

when I was in the city my brother was at home.

If cum implies cause as well as time, it requires the subjunctive.

When **cum** is used with the **imperfect** or **pluperfect**, more often than not it takes the **subjunctive**.

Cæsar, cum Galli victi essent, *When the Gauls had been conquered, Cæsar returned to Italy.*
in Italiā rediit

(We are not merely told *when*, but the cause *why* Cæsar was able to return.)

EXERCISE 74.

A. 1. Epistola ā puerō scribitur ; mox ad mātrem mittētur. 2. Multōs annōs bella ā Rōmānis gerēbantur. 3. Puerō pallium datum est ut corpus tegātur. 4. Carri ēmpti sunt ; frūmentum in urbem portātum est. 5. Sī urbs dēfēnsa erit nōn vincēmur. 6. Cæsar, cum castra posita essent, ducēs convocāvit. 7. Galli, cum auxilium missum esset, facile Rōmānōs vicērunt. 8. Portae claudāntur (R. 37 (d), p. 68) nē opprimāmur. 9. Stulta verba dicta sunt. 10. Eō proeliō fēminae ā pueris dēfēnsae erant.

B. 1. Guards are being placed ; the gates are being closed. 2. Hostages will be sent to Cæsar. 3. When¹ the hostages had been sent Cæsar decided to hasten into Italy. 4. The forces of the Romans were conquered by Hannibal. 5. Wine had been sent to the soldiers by the inhabitants. 6. Our [men], led by Cæsar, will not easily be conquered. 7. When the general had arrived in the plain, the gates of the city were shut. 8. Let us prepare arms that the enemy may be conquered. 9. If guards are placed at (= *ad* with accus.) the gates, our city will be defended. 10. We advised the citizens that the gates should be shut.

EXERCISE 75.

On audior (Vocab. 58-59, pp. 138-139).

Vivā vōce :—

(1) they are being fortified	I may be punished
they will be fortified	he might be punished
they may be fortified	they might be punished
they were being fortified	thou wilt be bound
we shall be punished	thou' mayst be bound
you were being punished	he might be bound

¹ Imitate the order of Rule 61, p. 114.

(2) Give the perfect participle (R. 56, p. 107) of :—

ēradiō, finiō, custōdiō, mūniō, sepeliō
pūniō, nūtriō, dormiō, vinciō, impediō

- (3) the boy has been trained the slave has been bound
the girls have been trained the slaves had been guarded
we had been nourished the slaves will have been
you will have been nourished guarded
the bodies have been buried he may have been punished
the town has been fortified they may have been punished
they might have been forti-
fied

EXERCISE 76.

A. 1. Multī occīsi sunt ; corpora eōrum sepeliantur. 2. Urbs mūnītur fossā et vallō. 3. Socii convēnerant ut Roma mūnīrētur. 4. Ō senex, tua verba audiantur ! Puellae magnā cūrā ā patre ērudītae erant. 5. Cīvēs monet ut urbs mūrīs altīs mūniātur. 6. Hostēs, armīs gravibus impeditī, aegrē in castra pervēnērunt. 7. Galli, cum corpora occīsōrum sepulta essēt, in suōs vīcōs contendērunt. 8. Sī captīvī vīctī erunt quis eōs liberābit ? 9. Decimō annō Troia, mūrīs magnīs mūnīta, ā Graecīs capta est. 10. Scelera semper pūniantur.

B. 1. The war is ended (§ 69, p. 106) ; let the soldiers hasten into their native land. 2. The soldiers will be punished if they guard the captives badly. 3. Let us take care that the city is fortified. 4. The bodies have been well nourished ; the minds have been well trained. 5. The captives, bound with chains, were being led into the camp. 6. After the battle the bodies of the slain were buried with great honour. 7. All labours will be finished by death. 8. Take care that the laws are obeyed. 9. Let the bodies be buried in the wood. 10. When the war had been ended the leader hastened into Italy.

VERB FORMS.

These may be used orally or in writing. They should be used for conjugations by substituting other verbs from the vocabularies.

ACTIVE.

i we praise	let them not praise	he was praising
he has praised	I was praising	he might praise
I had been praising	we had praised	we shall praise
he may praise	I might praise	praise (sing.)
5 to have praised	40 to praise (supine)	75 we had praised
praising (part.)	I shall praise	thou mayst praise
thou hast praised	I may praise	about to praise
we were praising	you (sing.) praise	they praised
I shall praise	he praised	you were praising
10 he may praise	45 they may praise	80 let us not praise
he might praise	they would have praised	you had praised
to praise	praise	they may praise
we praised	do not praise	you are praising
you may praise	they have praised	praise (plural)
15 thou mightest praise	50 thou wilt praise	85 they had praised
we had praised	he must praise	he may have praised
they will have praised	in praising (supine)	they had praised
of praising	he might praise	we praised
I praised	thou wilt praise	you praised
20 they will praise	55 he might have praised	90 of praising
they must praise	you praise	they may have prai
by praising	thou hadst praised	they have praised
they praise	we may have praised	thou wast praising
let us praise	they may have praised	let him praise
25 we shall have praised	60 they are praising	95 to be about to prai
they will have praised	he was praising	they would have pr
do not praise	thou wilt have praised	we praised
of praising	I may have praised	do not praise
he is praising	I shall have praised	they may praise
30 they will be praising	65 give the perfect stem	100 to have praised
he may praise	we may praise	I may have praised
he will praise	they would have praised	you will praise
he was praising	he will praise	they might have pr
about to praise	he may praise	we are about to pr
35 let them praise	70 may he not praise	105 praising (participle)

PASSIVE.

1 praised	they may have been	thou mayst be praised
they were praised	praised	we shall be praised
he had been praised	to be about to be praised	he was praised
we shall be praised	35 you had been praised	he might have been
5 they are praised	they are being praised	praised
he will be praised	he might be praised	70 they are being praised
he may be praised	they may be praised	be praised
she has been praised	thou mayst be praised	I was being praised
you will have been	40 I was being praised	thou wilt be praised
praised	they will be praised	to be about to be praised
10 to be praised	they will have been	75 he is praised
I may be praised	praised	he is being praised
I shall be praised	we should have been	thou mayst be praised
they (fem.) had been	praised	to be praised
praised	you may be praised (pl.)	they will be praised
do not be praised	45 we had been praised	80 to be about to be praised
15 to have been praised	she will have been praised	thou art being praised
be ye praised	they are being praised	let us be praised
let them be praised	they are praised (§ 69, p. 106)	thou wast being praised
we shall be praised	we may have been praised	thou hast been praised
thou art being praised	50 they (fem.) had been praised	85 he was being praised
20 I shall be praised	we might have been praised	requiring to be praised
he is praised	I may have been praised	to be praised
he was praised	I shall have been praised	thou mightest be praised
he has been praised	I am being praised	may we be praised !
you may be praised	55 we might be praised	90 they (neut.) had been
25 you may have been	thou mayst be praised	praised
praised	thou wast being praised	thou hadst been praised
to have been praised	they (fem.) had been praised	we shall be praised
we are being praised	they (neut.) had been	having been praised
we were being praised	praised	they were being praised
we may be praised	60 he may have been praised	95 they are being praised
30 you (plural) are being	she may have been praised	thou wast being praised
praised	thou art praised	they were praised
be praised (plural)	thou art being praised	thou wouldst have been
he might have been	he will be praised	praised
praised	65 thou wilt be praised	to have been praised

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE.

1 he praises	requiring to be praised	you were praising
he is being praised	you praised	be ye praised
they will praise	you are being praised	75 be ye not praised
they will be praised	40 thou art praised	you were praising
5 to praise	we may be praised	you were being praise
to be praised	he may praise	they might praise
they have praised	let us praise	they might be praised
they have been praised	let us be praised	80 requiring to be praise
they had been praised	45 we (f.) had been praised	we are praising
10 thou wilt be praised	he had praised	we are praised
he may praise	they will have been praised	you were being praise
he may be praised	they may have been praised	requiring to be praise
I am being praised	to be praising	85 praised
to have been praised	50 to be praised	to praise
15 do not praise	they will praise	to be praised
do not be praised	they will have been praised	to have praised
he might praise	I might have been praised	to have been praised
he might be praised	let us praise	90 praised
let them be praised	55 let us be praised	do not praise (plur.)
20 they are praising	praising (partic.)	do not be praised (plu
they are being praised	praised	they will have praise
of praising (gerund)	we are praising	they (f.) will have
praised	we are praised	praised
they praised	60 we are being praised	95 I might praise
25 they are praised	we were praised	I might be praised
they are being praised	you praised	thou wilt praise
you had been praised	you were praising	thou wilt be praised
they (f.) had been praised	you were praised	you are being praise
they (n.) had been praised	65 you had been praised	100 you will be praised
30 they may have praised	to have praised	you may be praised
I may have praised	I may praise	you might be praise
they will have praised	I may be praised	they must be praise
I may have praised	he will praise	he was praising
you may have praised	70 he will be praised	105 he was being praise
35 you may be praised	he will be praising	to have been praise
praising (gerund)	thou wast being praised	to be praised

APPENDIX I.

IRREGULARITIES OF DECLENSION.

1. **First Declension.**—(a) The dative and ablative plural of *dēa*, goddess; *filia*, daughter, end in *-ābus*, e.g., *deābus*, etc. This is to distinguish these words from the corresponding cases of the masculine, e.g., *filīs*, to the sons; *filīabus*, to the daughters.

The same rule is sometimes followed, especially when a distinction of sex is necessary, with a few other words, e.g., *liberta*, freed woman; *mūla*, she-mule.

(b) An old genitive singular in *-ās* is found in *paterfamiliās*, father of a family; acc. *patremfamiliās*; plur. *patrēsfamiliās*.

This form, which is sometimes written in two words, is also used with *māter*, *filius* and *filia*, e.g., *māterfamiliās*.

2. **Second Declension.**—(a) The genitive singular of words ending in *-ius* and *-ium* sometimes contracts *-iī* into *-ī*.

(b) An old genitive plural in *-um* is sometimes used instead of *-ōrum*, especially with names of coins, weights and measures, e.g., *sēstertius* (a coin = 2½d.), genitive plural *sēstertium*; *decemvir* (member of a committee of ten), *decemvirum*.

(c) *Deus*, god, has vocative *dēus*; nominative and vocative plural *dī* (*dei*); dative and ablative plural *dīs* (*deīs*); genitive plural *deōrum*, or *deum*.

3. **Third Declension.**—(a) *Bōs* (masc. or fem.), *bovis*, ox, has exceptional forms: genitive plural, *boum*; dative and ablative, *bōbus* or *būbus*.

(b) *Iuppiter* (= *Iou* + *pater*), *Jupiter*, has Acc. *Iovem*, Gen. *Iovis*, Dat. *Iovi*, Abl. *Iove*.

(c) *Vīs* (fem.), *force*, in the singular has only accusative *vīm*, ablative *vi*. In the plural it changes its meaning and is declined throughout: *virēs* (mostly) *physical strength*, *virēs*, *virium*, *viribus*, *viribus*.

4. Fourth Declension.—*Domus* (fem.), *house*, is thus declined :—

Sing. *domus*, *domum*, *domūs* or *domi*, *domui* or *domō*, *domō*.

Plur. *domūs*, *domōs* or *domūs*, *domōrum* or *domuum*, *domibus*, *domibus*.

5. Fifth Declension.—*Rēspūblica* ¹ (fem.), *state*, is the noun *rēs* and the adjective *pūblica* ; each word is separately declined : gen. *reipūblīcae*, etc.

A similar word is *iūsiūrāndum* (neut.), *oath*, gen. *iūrisiūrādi*, etc.

APPENDIX II.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

Masculine nouns in *thick* type ; feminine in *italics* ; neuter in ordinary type.

A. Natural gender according to meaning :—

(1) Names of males, Exceptions. (a) *Mountains* : months, winds, mountains *Aetna*, *Hybla*, *Īda*, etc., *Pēlion* and peoples are masculine. and *Alpēs* (plur.).

(b) *Rivers* : *Allia*, *Lēthē*, *Styx*.

(2) Names of females, Exceptions. (a) *Plants* : plants, countries, islands and cities are feminine. *acanthus* (a prickly plant), *calamus* (reed), *oleaster* (wild olive), etc. All in -um are neuter, e.g., *ligustrum* (privet) ; also many third declension words in -er, e.g., *acer*, -eris (maple), *papāver*, -eris (poppy), etc.

(b) *Cities* : Plurals in -i, as *Delphi* ; also *Canōpus*, etc. All in -um are neuter. Third declension in -e and -ur are neuter.

¹ These words are sometimes written as two words, e.g., *rēs publica*.

(3) Indeclinable words and verbal nouns are neuter, *e.g.*, *fās*, *alpha*, *amāre*.

B. Gender shown by the Form :—

First Declension. — All **Exceptions.**—Names of men, *feminine*. *nauta*, *agricola*, *Belgæ*, *Hadria* (the Adriatic Sea).

Second Declension. — **Exceptions :—**
Nouns in *-us* and *-er* are *Fem. : alvus* (belly), *colus* (distaff), *domus* (house), *humus* (ground), *vannus* (winnowing fan).
Nouns in *-um* are neuter.

Neut. : pelagus (sea), *vīrus* (poison), *vulgus* (sometimes masc.) (common people).

Third Declension.—

(a) **Masculine endings :**
er, *or*, *ōs*.
ēs, increasing in the genitive.
ō, except *dō*, *gō*, *iō*.

Exceptions :—
er. Neut. : cadāver, *-eris* (corpse), *iter*, *itineris* (journey).
papāver, *-eris* (poppy), *tūber*, *-eris* (swelling), *ūber*, *-eris* (udder), *vēr*, *vēris* (spring), *verber*, *-eris* (lash). *Fem. : linter*, *-tris* (skiff).

or. Neut. : aequor, *-oris* (sea), *marmor*, *-oris* (marble), *cor*, *cordis* (heart). *Fem. : arbor*, *-oris* (tree).

ōs. Neut. : os (ossis) (bone), *ōs* (ōris) (mouth). *Fem. : cōs*, *cōtis* (whetstone), *dōs*, *dōtis* (dowry).

ēs. Neut. : aes, *aeris* (brass).
Fem. : compēs, *-edis* (fetter), *mercēs*, *-ēdis* (pay), *merges*, *-itis* (sheaf), *quies*, *-ētis* (rest), *re-*

quiēs, -ētis (repose), *seges*, -etis (harvest), *teges*, -etis (mat).

ō. Fem.: *carō*, *carnis* (flesh).

(b) *Feminine endings* :

dō, *gō*, *iō*.

ās, *is*, *aus*, *x*.

ēs, not increasing in the genitive.

s, preceded by a consonant.

Exceptions :—

dō. Masc. : *ōrdō*, -inis (series), *cardō*, -inis (hinge).

gō. Masc. : *ligō*, -ōnis (mattock), *margō*, -inis (edge).

iō. Common ¹ nouns, e.g. *pāpiliō*, -iōnis (butterfly), *pugiō*, -iōnis (dagger), *stēlliō*, -iōnis (lizard).

as. Masc. : *ās*, *assis* (pound), *elephās*, -ntis (elephant), *vas*.² Neut. : *vās*,² *fās* (indecl.) (right), *nefās* (indecl.) (crime).

is. Masc. : *amnis* (river), *anguis* (fem.)³ (snake), *axis* (axle), *cassēs* (gen. -ium) (hunting net), *collis* (hill), *cinis*, -eris (ashes), *crinis* (hair), *ēnsis* (sword), *fascis* (bundle), *fīnis* (m. or f.) (end), *follis* (bag), *fūnis* (rope), *ignis* (fire), *lapis*, -idis (stone), *mēnsis* (month), *orbis* (circle), *pānis* (bread), *piscis* (fish), *postis* (doorpost), *pulvis*, -eris (dust), *sanguis*, -inis (blood), *torris* (firebrand), *unguis* (nail of finger, etc.), *vectis* (lever), *vermis* (worm).

¹ The feminine nouns in *iō* are abstract.

² *Vas*, *vasis* (masc.), a *surety*; *vās*, *vāsis* (neut.), *vessel*, *dish*. In the plural *vās* makes *vāsa*, *vāsōrum*, etc., like a second declension neuter.

³ This means that in some authors the word is feminine though it is usually masculine.

x. Masc. : calix, -icis (goblet), cōdex, -icis (book), cortex, -icis (*m. rarely f.*) (bark of tree), grex, gregis (herd), pollex, -icis (thumb), silex, -icis (*m. and f.*) (flint), vertex, -icis (whirlpool).

s. Masc. : mōns, -ntis (mountain), pōns -ntis (bridge), fōns, -ntis (fountain), dēns, -ntis (tooth), quadrāns, -ntis (quarter), rudēns, -ntis (rope).

(c) Neuter endings :

c, a, t, e, l, n.

ar, ur.

us (short).

Exceptions :—

l. Masc. : sāl, salis (salt), sōl, sōlis (sun).

n. Masc. : liēn, -ēnis (spleen), pecten, -inis (comb).

ur. Masc. : fūr, fūris (thief), farfur, -uris (bran), turtur, -uris (turtledove), vultur, -uris (vulture).

us. Fem. : pecus (-udis) (a head of cattle), and all with genitive -ūtis or -ūdis :—

incūs, -ūdis (anvil), iuven-tūs, -tūtis (youth).

palūs, -ūdis (marsh), salūs, -ūtis (safety).

senectūs, -ūtis (old age), ser-vitūs, -ūtis (slavery).

tellūs, -ūris (earth).

Māsc. : lepus, -oris (hare), mūs, -ūris (mouse), grūs, gruis (*fem.*) (crane), sūs, suis (*fem.*) (pig).

Fourth Declension. — *us*
masc., *ū* neut.

Exceptions. — *Fem.* : *acus*
(needle), *manus* (hand), *domus*
(house), *idūs* (pl.) (ides), *porti-*
cus (porch), *tribus* (tribe).

Fifth Declension. — *All*
feminine.

Exceptions. — *Masc.* : *diēs*
(*fem.* in sing. meaning “ap-
pointed day”) (day), and *meri-*
diēs (midday).

APPENDIX III.

PARSING.

The most important words, *verb* and *noun* (or pronoun), are set out in detail. Other parts of speech can be parsed on the plan shown in the examples. In all cases begin by stating the part of speech.

- Verb.** (a) Give the parts of the verb.
(b) Person, number, tense, mood, voice.
(c) Agrees with subject and takes direct object
(if a trans. v.).
(d) Explain the mood.¹

- Noun.** (a) Give nominative, genitive singular and gender.
(b) Case, number, with reason for case.

Examples of Parsing.

(a) *Magnus est dolor militum, comitēs sepelientium.* (b) *Instruite aciem, militēs, nē hostēs nōs vincant.* (c) *In duce erat plūs audāciae quam sapientiae.* (d) *Proximā nocte sociōs in arcem clam dūxit.*

¹ This only applies to the subjunctive. If the verb is indicative or imperative (d) may be omitted.

magnus	.	adjective, positive, masculine, nominative, agrees with <i>dolor</i> .
dolor	. .	(a) noun from <i>dolor</i> , <i>dolōris</i> (masc.). (b) nominative singular, subject after <i>est</i> .
militum	. .	(a) noun from <i>mīles</i> , <i>mīlitis</i> (masc.). (b) genitive plural, depending on <i>dolor</i> . ¹
sepelientium		(a) verb from <i>sepeliō</i> , -īre, -ivī, <i>sepultum</i> , 4. (b) present participle. (c) genitive case, plural, agrees with <i>militum</i> .
nē	. . .	subordinative conjunction joining the dependent clause <i>hostēs . . . vincant</i> to the principal sentence <i>instruite</i> .
vincant	. .	(a) verb from <i>vincō</i> , -ere, <i>vici</i> , <i>victum</i> , 3. (b) 3rd person plural, present subjunctive, active. (c) agrees with subject <i>hostēs</i> , and has <i>nōs</i> as its direct object in the accusative. (d) it is subjunctive because it denotes negative purpose.
duce	. . .	(a) noun from <i>dux</i> , <i>ducis</i> (masc.). (b) ablative singular, with the preposition <i>in</i> .
plūs	. . .	adjective, comparative neuter of <i>multus</i> , used as a noun, with the partitive genitive <i>audāciæ</i> depending on it.
sapientiae	. .	(a) noun from <i>sapientia</i> , -ae (fem.). (b) genitive singular, depending on <i>plūs</i> (understood).
nocte	. . .	(a) noun from <i>nox</i> , <i>noctis</i> (fem.). (b) ablative singular, denoting time when.
in	. . .	preposition followed by the accusative <i>arcem</i> (motion towards).
clam	. . .	adverb, modifying <i>dūxit</i> .

¹ *Militum* is a subjective genitive.

VOCABULARIES 1-76.

* * In these vocabularies all long vowels are marked with the sign $\bar{}$ and the quantity of a vowel is not marked in the following cases :—

(a) All short vowels.

(b) Diphthongs, which are always long.

VOCABULARIES 1 AND 2.

nauta (m.), <i>sailor.</i>	rēgina (f.), <i>queen.</i>
agricola (m.), <i>farmer.</i>	puella (f.), <i>girl.</i>
aqua (f.), <i>water.</i>	casa (f.), <i>cottage.</i>
terra (f.), <i>land.</i>	insula (f.), <i>island.</i>
amat, (he, she, it) <i>loves.</i>	laudat, (he, she, it) <i>praises.</i>

VOCABULARIES 3 AND 4.

aquila (f.), <i>eagle.</i>	filia (f.), <i>daughter.</i>
āla (f.), <i>wing.</i>	rosa (f.), <i>rose.</i>
hasta (f.), <i>spear.</i>	via (f.), <i>way.</i>
sapientia (f.), <i>wisdom.</i>	pecūnia, <i>money.</i>
dat, (he, she, it) <i>gives.</i>	mōnstrat (he, she, it) <i>shows.</i>

VOCABULARY 5.

mōnstrat, (he, she, it) <i>shows.</i>	mōnstrant, (they) <i>show.</i>
terret, (he, she, it) <i>terrifies.</i>	terrent, (they) <i>terrify.</i>
habet, (he, she, it) <i>has.</i>	habent, (they) <i>have.</i>

VOCABULARY 6.

corōna (f.), <i>crown.</i>	columba (f.), <i>dove.</i>
silva (f.), <i>a wood.</i>	spina (f.), <i>thorn.</i>
incola (m.), <i>inhabitant.</i>	vita (f.), <i>life.</i>
vulnerat, (he, she, it) <i>wounds.</i>	ōrnat, (he, she, it) <i>adorns.</i>
vulnerant, (they) <i>wound.</i>	ōrnant, (they) <i>adorn.</i>

VOCABULARY 7.

<i>carrus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>cart</i> .	<i>taurus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>bull</i> .
<i>equus</i> , ¹ -ī (m.), <i>horse</i> .	<i>ventus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>wind</i> .
<i>vicus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>village</i> .	<i>amicus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>friend</i> .
<i>hortus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>garden</i> .	<i>dominus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>lord, master</i> .
<i>agnus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>lamb</i> .	<i>et</i> ² (conj.), <i>and</i> .
<i>lupus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>wolf</i> .	<i>nōn</i> ² (adv.), <i>not</i> .

VOCABULARY 8.

<i>Claudius</i> , -ī (m.), <i>Claudius</i> .	<i>gladius</i> , -ī (m.), <i>sword</i> .
<i>deus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>god</i> .	<i>nūntius</i> , -ī (m.), <i>messenger</i> .
<i>filius</i> , -ī (m.), <i>son</i> .	<i>Rōmānus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>a Roman</i> .
<i>fluvius</i> , -ī (m.), <i>river</i> .	<i>Gallus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>a Gaul</i> .

VOCABULARY 9.

<i>ager</i> , <i>agri</i> (m.), <i>field</i> .	<i>est</i> , <i>is</i> .
<i>aper</i> , <i>apri</i> (m.), <i>wild boar</i> .	<i>sunt</i> , <i>are</i> .
<i>culter</i> , <i>cultri</i> (m.), <i>knife</i> .	<i>currit</i> , (he, she, it) <i>runs</i> .
<i>faber</i> , <i>fabri</i> (m.), <i>workman</i> .	<i>currunt</i> , (they) <i>run</i> .
<i>liber</i> , <i>libri</i> (m.), <i>book</i> .	<i>nunc</i> , <i>now</i> .
<i>minister</i> , <i>ministri</i> (m.), <i>servant</i> .	<i>amicus</i> , -ī (m.), <i>friend</i> .

VOCABULARY 10.

<i>gener</i> , <i>generi</i> (m.), <i>son-in-law</i> .	<i>vesper</i> , <i>vesperi</i> (m.), <i>evening</i> .
<i>socer</i> , <i>soceri</i> (m.), <i>father-in-law</i> .	<i>vir</i> , <i>viri</i> (m.), <i>man</i> .
<i>signifer</i> , <i>signiferi</i> (m.), <i>standard-bearer</i> .	<i>liberi</i> , ³ <i>liberōrum</i> (m., pl.), <i>children</i> .

¹ In words like *equus* *qu* represents one sound; the endings are obtained by modifying the final *-us*. Thus *qu* occurs in every case.

Thus sing. *equ-us*, *equ-e*, *equ-um*, *equ-i*, *equ-ō*, *equ-is*,
 plur. *equ-i*, *equ-i*, *equ-ōs*, *equ-ōrum*, *equ-is*, *equ-is*.

² Adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions are not declined.

³ *Liberi* is only used (in good Latin) in the plural. It is really the plural of the adjective *liber*, free. When the singular word *child* is required it is translated by *puer*, *filius*, *filia*, *infāns*, etc.

Carefully distinguish *libri*, *librōs*, etc., *books*,
 and *liberi*, *liberōs*, etc., *children*.

VOCABULARY 11.

argentum, -ī (n.), <i>silver</i> .	periculum, -ī (n.), <i>danger</i> .
aurum, -ī (n.), <i>gold</i> .	praemium, -ī (n.), <i>reward</i> .
dōnum, -ī (n.), <i>gift</i> .	scūtum, -ī (n.), <i>shield</i> .
oppidum, -ī (n.), <i>town</i> .	templum, -ī (n.), <i>temple</i> .
arma, ¹ armōrum (n., pl.), <i>arms</i> .	dēlectat, (he, she, it) <i>delights</i> .
castra, ¹ castrōrum (n., pl.), <i>camp</i> .	dēlectant, (they) <i>delight</i> .

VOCABULARY 12.

causa, -ae (f.), <i>cause</i> .	Germānia, -ae (f.), <i>Germany</i> .
dea, -ae (f.), <i>goddess</i> .	Britannia, -ae (f.), <i>Britain</i> .
ira, -ae (f.), <i>anger</i> .	malum, -ī (n.), <i>an evil</i> .
laetitia, -ae (f.), <i>joy</i> .	pelagus, ² -ī (n.), <i>sea</i> .
patria, -ae (f.), <i>fatherland</i> .	Diāna, -ae (f.), <i>Diana</i> .
praeda, -ae (f.), <i>prey, booty</i> .	Neptūnus, -ī (m.), <i>Neptune</i> .
saepe (adv.), <i>often</i> .	semper (adv.), <i>always</i> .

VOCABULARY 13.

acūtus, -a, -um, <i>sharp</i> .	longus, -a, -um, <i>long</i> .
albus, -a, -um, <i>white</i> .	magnus, -a, -um, <i>great, large</i> .
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i> .	multus, -a, -um, <i>much, many</i> .
clārus, -a, -um, <i>famous</i> .	parvus, -a, -um, <i>small, little</i> .
ferus, -a, -um, <i>wild</i> .	timidus, -a, -um, <i>timid</i> .
grātus, -a, -um, <i>pleasing</i> .	validus, -a, -um, <i>strong</i> .
stultus, -a, -um, <i>foolish</i> .	tuus, -a, -um, <i>thy</i> .

VOCABULARY 14.

lātus, -a, -um, <i>broad, wide</i> .	mūrus, -ī (m.), <i>wall</i> .
iūstus, -a, -um, <i>just</i> .	servus, -ī (m.), <i>slave</i> .
altus, -a, -um, <i>high</i> .	fluvius, -ī (m.), <i>river</i> .

¹ These words are neuter plurals. They must be carefully distinguished from First Declension words. In the case of *castra*, *camp*, though the English is singular the Latin is plural, and all verbs and adjectives agreeing with *castra* must be plural.

² Remember that this word is neuter (App. II. (B), and that its accusative is *pelagus* (§ 19, p. 10).

VOCABULARIES 15 AND 16.

<i>aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick.</i>	<i>pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, beautiful.</i>
<i>macer, macra, macrum, thin, meagre.</i>	<i>ruber, rubra, rubrum, red.</i>
<i>niger, nigra, nigrum, black.</i>	<i>sacer, sacra, sacrum, sacred.</i>
<i>noster, nostra, nostrum, our.</i>	<i>timet, (he, she, it) fears.</i>
<i>vester, vestra, vestrum, your.</i>	<i>timent, (they), fear.</i>
<i>fēmina, -ae (f.), woman.</i>	

VOCABULARY 17.

<i>bellum, -i (n.), war.</i>	<i>falsus, -a, -um, false.</i>
<i>cōsiliū, -i (n.), plan.</i>	<i>avidus, -a, -um, greedy.</i>
<i>verbum, -i (n.), word.</i>	<i>iracundus, -a, -um, angry.</i>
<i>animus, -i (m.), mind.</i>	<i>nōtus, -a, -um, known.</i>

VOCABULARY 18.

Gender.¹ Words ending in -x are mostly feminine : see Appendix II.

<i>pāx, pāc-is (f.), peace.</i>	<i>lūna, -ae (f.), moon.</i>
<i>vōx, vōc-is (f.), voice.</i>	<i>captivus, -i (m.), captive.</i>
<i>lūx, lūc-is (f.), light.</i>	<i>iūcundus, -a, -um, pleasant.</i>
<i>nux, nuc-is (f.), nut.</i>	<i>perniciōsus, -a, -um, destructive.</i>
<i>grex, greg-is (m.), flock.</i>	<i>necessārius, -a, -um, necessary.</i>
<i>nix, niv-is (f.), snow.</i>	<i>albus, -a, -um, white.</i>
<i>lēx, lēg-is (f.), law.</i>	<i>cūr ? why ?</i>
<i>terret, (he, she, it) terrifies.</i>	<i>terrent, (they) terrify.</i>
<i>terrēt-ur, (he, she, it) is terrified.</i>	<i>terrent-ur, (they) are terrified.</i>
<i>videt, (he, she, it) sees.</i>	<i>vident, (they) see.</i>

VOCABULARY 19.

Gender. The ending -es increasing in the genitive is masculine, e.g.,
pēs, pedis.

<i>laus, laud-is (f.), praise.</i>	<i>comes, comit-is (c.), companion.</i>
<i>obses, obsid-is (c.), hostage.</i>	<i>civitās, civitāt-is (f.), state.</i>
<i>custōs, custōd-is (c.), guardian.</i>	<i>celeritās, celeritāt-is (f.), speed.</i>
<i>eques, equit-is (m.), horse soldier.</i>	<i>hiems, hiem-is (f.), winter.</i>
<i>pedes, pedit-is (m.), foot soldier.</i>	<i>quis ? who ?</i>
<i>mittit, (he, she, it) sends.</i>	<i>mittunt, (they) send.</i>

¹ The gender of the third declension is given in full in Appendix II. For the present, however, the pupil had better confine himself to the short rules given with the vocabularies.

VOCABULARY 20.

Gender. Words ending in -or and -ōs are masculine, except *arbor* (a tree), which is feminine. *Soror* is feminine by meaning.

NOTE.—The genitive -ōris¹ (long ō) shows that the noun is masculine.

cōsul, cōsul-is (m.), *consul*.²
 victor, victōr-is (m.), *conqueror*.
 clāmōr, clāmōr-is (m.), *shout*.
 color, colōr-is (m.), *colour*.
 labor, labōr-is (m.), *labour*.
 odor, odōr-is (m.), *smell*.
 sōl, sōl-is (m.), *sun*.
 Gallia, -ae (f.), *Gaul*.
 nunc (adv.), *now*.
 tunc (adv.), *then*.

flōs, flōr-is (m.), *flower*.
 arbor, arbor-is (f.), *tree*.
 soror, sorōr-is (f.), *sister*.
 māter, mātr-is (f.), *mother*.
 pater, patr-is (m.), *father*.
 ānser, ānser-is (m.), *goose*.
 Caesar, Caesar-is (m.), *Cæsar*.
 Ītalia, -ae, *Italy*.
 erat, (he, she, it) *was*.
 erant, (they) *were*.

VOCABULARY 22.

Gender. -dō, gō and -iō are feminine endings.

legiō, legiōnis (f.), *legion*.³
 Scipiō, Scipiōnis (m.), *Scipio*.
 Āfrica, Āfricae (f.), *Africa*.
 porta, portae (f.), *gate*.

virgō, virginis (f.), *maiden*.
 mulier, mulieris (f.), *woman*.
 fēmina, -ae, *woman* (= *female*).
 mortuus, mortua, mortuum, *dead*.

VOCABULARY 23.

Gender. The genitive -ōris is found in masculine nouns, e.g., odor, odōris; the genitive -oris (or -eris) in neuter nouns, e.g., tempus, temp-oris.

carmen, carminis (n.), *song*.
 fulmen, fulminis (n.), *lightning*.
 genus, generis (n.), *kind, sort*.
 vulnus, vulneris (n.), *wound*.
 litus, liforis (n.), *shore*.

tempus, temporis (n.), *time*.
 frigus, frigoris (n.), *cold*.
 aestās, aestātis (f.), *summer*.
 interdum, *sometimes*.
 sidus, sideris (n.), *constellation*.

¹ Students of French should note this rule with great care, the derived words in French being, with three exceptions, all feminine, e.g., la fleur, la couleur.

² In Rome two consuls were elected every year. The consuls were the highest magistrates in Rome. Among their duties one was to lead the army or part of the army in war.

³ A legion was a division of the Roman army. At first it consisted of 300 horsemen (*equites*) and 3000 footmen (*pedites*), but in later times the number of footmen was increased.

stēlla, stēllae (f.), *star*.
 historia, historiae (f.), *story*.
 nox, noctis (f.), *night*.

varius,¹ -a, -um, *various*.
 antiquus,¹ -a, -um, *old, ancient*.

VOCABULARY 25.

Gender. (a) Words ending in -is and -ēs are *feminine*.

Common masculine exceptions are collis (m.), *hill*, finis (m.), *end*, ignis (m.), *fire*, and mēnsis (m.), *month*.

(b) Words ending in s after a consonant (e.g., urbs, pars, etc.) are *feminine*.

Important masculine exceptions are mōns, fōns, pōns, dēns.

auris, auris (f.), *ear*.
 avis, avis (f.), *bird*.
 civis, civis (c.), *citizen*.
 ignis, ignis (m.), *fire*.
 mēnsis, mēnsis (m.), *month*.
 testis, testis (c.), *witness*.
 turris, turris (f.), *tower*.
 porta, portae (f.), *gate*.
 parat, (he, she, it) *prepares*.

canis, canis (c.), *dog*.
 iuvenis, iuvenis (c.), *young person*.
 vulpēs, vulpis (f.), *fox*.
 arx, arcis (f.), *citadel*.
 nox, noctis (f.), *night*.
 dēns, dentis (m.), *tooth*.
 mōns, montis (m.), *mountain*.
 validus, -a, -um, *strong*.
 parant, (they) *prepare*.

VOCABULARY 26.

nāvis, nāvis (f.), *ship*.
 rēte, rētis (n.), *net*.
 piscis, piscis (m.), *fish*.
 piscātor, -ōris (m.), *fisherman*.
 vērātor, -ōris (m.), *hunter*.
 nōnnūllus, -a, -um, *some*.
 prīmus, -a, -um, *first*.

vectigal, vectigālis (n.), *tax*.
 annus, -i (m.), *year*.
 rīpa, -ae (f.), *bank (of a river)*.
 molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*.
 frigidus, -a, -um, *cold*.
 vivit, (he, she, it) *lives*.
 vivunt, (they) *live*.

VOCABULARY 27.

bellum, -i (n.), *war*.
 proelium, -i (n.), *battle*.
 pugna, -ae (f.), *a fight*.
 sagitta, -ae (f.), *arrow*.

cibus, -i (m.), *food*.
 regiō, -ōnis (f.), *region, district*.
 nāvis, -is (f.), *ship*.
 fuga, -ae (f.), *flight*.

¹ It should be remembered that the feminine and neuter of adjectives in -us are got by changing the -us to -a and -um. Thus vari-us, vari-a, vari-um.

VOCABULARY 28.

brevis, -e, *short*.
 crudēlis, -e, *cruel*.
 dulcis, -e, *sweet*.
 fertilis, -e, *fertile*.
 fidēlis, -e, *faithful*.

omnis, -e, *all*.
 tristis, -e, *sad*.
 turpis, -e, *disgraceful, base*.
 ūtilis, -e, *useful*.
 fortis, -e, *brave*.

VOCABULARY 29.

audāx, -ācis, *bold*.
 ferōx, -ōcis, *fierce*.
 potēns, -entis, *powerful*.
 solum, -ī (n.), *soil*.

praesēns, -entis, *present*.
 absēns, -entis, *absent*.
 sapiēns, -entis, *wise*.
 malum, -ī (n.), *an evil*.

VOCABULARY 31.

brevior, -ius, *shorter*.
 dulcior, -ius, *sweeter*.
 fertilior, -ius, *more fertile*.
 potentior, -ius, *more powerful*.
 ūtilior, -ius, *more useful*.

facilior, -ius, *easier*.
 facilis, -e, *easy*.
 levis,¹ -e, *light, unimportant*.
 imprūdēns, -entis, *imprudent*.
 quam,² *than*.

VOCABULARY 33.

acus, -ūs (f.), *needle*.
 arcus, -ūs (m.), *bow*.
 adventus, -ūs (m.), *arrival*.
 currus, -ūs (m.), *chariot*.
 exercitus, -ūs (m.), *army*.
 impetus, -ūs (m.), *attack*.
 superat, (he, she, it) *overcomes*.
 superant, (they) *overcome*.

manus, -ūs (f.), *hand*.
 portus, -ūs (m.), *harbour*.
 cornū, -ūs (n.), *horn, wing of an army*.
 genū, -ūs (n.), *knee*.
 dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*.
 cōpia, -ae (f.), *plenty*.
 dūcit, (he, she, it) *leads*.
 dūcunt, (they) *lead*.

¹ *Levis* is an adjective; the noun *light* (e.g., the light of the sun) is *lūx*. See Voc. 18, p. 130.

In English the same word may be sometimes a noun, sometimes an adjective, etc., according as it is used. Thus in *An iron bridge* "iron" is an adjective, but in *Iron is a useful metal* "iron" is a noun. In Latin the noun iron = *ferrum*, the adjective iron = *ferreus* (declined like bonus).

² *Quam* is a conjunction. Adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions in Latin are not declined. They are often called indeclinable words.

VOCABULARY 34.

cōspectus, -ūs (m.), *sight, view*.
 equitātus,¹ -ūs (m.), *cavalry*.
 fructus, -ūs (m.), *fruit*.
 lacus, -ūs (m.), *lake*.
 quercus,² -ūs (f.), *oak*.
 metus, -ūs (m.), *fear*.
 trānsitus, -ūs (m.), *crossing*.
 trāns³ (prep. with accus.),
across, over.

Alpēs, Alpium (f. pl.), *the Alps*.
 Hannib-al,⁴ -alis, *Hannibal*.
 ē, ex (prep. with abl.), *out of*.
 victōria, -ae (f.), *victory*.
 facit, (he, she, it) *makes*.
 faciunt, (they) *make*.
 pugnat, (he, she, it) *fights*.
 pugnant, (they) *fight*.

VOCABULARY 35.

aci-ēs, -ēi (f.), *line⁵ of battle*.
 faci-ēs, ēi (f.), *face*.
 plāniti-ēs, ēi (f.), *plain*.
 sp-ēs, -ei (f.), *hope*.
 rēs, -ei (f.), *thing*.
 rēs secundae, *prosperity*.
 rēs adversae, *adversity*.
 rēspūblica, *the state, the common-wealth*.

dext-er, -tra, -trum, *right (adj.)*.
 sinist-er, -tra, -trum, *left (adj.)*.
 secund-us, -a, -um, *favourable*.
 advers-us, -a, -um, *adverse, unfavourable*.
 pūblicus, -a, -um, *public*.
 initi-um, -i (n.), *beginning*.
 compl-et, (he, she, it) *fills*.
 compl-ent, (they) *fill*.

NOTES TO VOCABULARY 35.—(1) *Rēs secundae*, literally favourable things or circumstances, and *rēs adversae* are plural.

(2) *Rēspūblica* is often written as two words, *rēs publica*. In either case each word is declined separately, e.g., accusative *rempūblicam* or *rem pūblicam*.

VOCABULARY 37.

cārus, -a, -um, *dear*.
 dēnsus, -a, -um, *dense*.

Belgae, -ārum (m. pl.), *Belgians*.
 socius, -i (m.), *an ally*.

¹ *equus*, -i, *horse*; *eques*, *equitis*, *horseman*; *equest-er*, -ris, -re, *equestrian*.

² Names of trees are feminine because *arbor* (f.) (Voc. 20, p. 131) is understood.

³ Most Latin prepositions take the accusative case, e.g., *trāns fluvium*, *trāns montem*. Some take the ablative, e.g., *ex urbe* = out of the city.

⁴ Hannibal (B.C. 252-182), a celebrated Carthaginian general, who fought against the Romans in the Second Punic War.

⁵ I.e., the army arranged in lines for fighting. An army on the march is called *agmen*, *agminis* (neut.). *Actiēs* also means *keenness*, e.g., *oculōrum actiēs*.

tūtus, -a, -um, <i>safe</i> .	pāx, -cis (f.), <i>peace</i> .
violēns, -entis, <i>violent</i> .	opus, -eris (n.), <i>work</i> .
ūtīlis, -e, <i>useful</i> .	canis, -is (c.), <i>dog</i> .
Rhodanus, ¹ -ī (m.), <i>the Rhône</i> .	tēlum, -ī (n.), <i>weapon, dart</i> .
Rhēnus, -ī (m.), <i>the Rhine</i> .	quis (m.), quid (n.), <i>who? what?</i>

VOCABULARY 38. RECAP. VOC. 25.

facilis, -e, <i>easy</i> .	patientia, -ae (f.), <i>patience</i> .
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i> .	fortūna, -ae (f.), <i>fortune</i> .
memoria, -ae (f.), <i>memory</i> .	iter, itineris (n.), <i>journey</i> .
Eurōpa, -ae (f.), <i>Europe</i> .	habēbat, (he, she, it) <i>had</i> .
amor, -ōris (m.), <i>love</i> .	habēbant, (they) <i>had</i> .

VOCABULARY 39.

factum, -ī (n.), <i>deed</i> .	pars, -tis (f.), <i>part</i> .
vadum, -ī (n.), <i>ford</i> .	pius, -a, -um, <i>dutiful</i> .
numerus, -ī (m.), <i>number</i> .	benevolus, -a, -um, <i>benevolent</i> .

VOCABULARY 40.

audācia, -ae (f.), <i>boldness</i> .	iumentum, -ī (n.), <i>baggage animal</i> .
sapientia, -ae (f.), <i>wisdom</i> .	perniciēs, -ēī (f.), <i>destruction</i> .
numerus, -ī (m.), <i>number</i> .	dūxit, (he, she, it) <i>led</i> .

VOCABULARY 41.

quis? <i>who? which?</i> (pronoun).	grātus, -a, -um, <i>pleasing</i> .
nēmō, ² <i>no one</i> .	amor, -ōris (m.), <i>love</i> .
patria, -ae (f.), <i>native land, fatherland</i> .	memor, memor-is, <i>mindful</i> (declined like dives, p. 39).
nōtus, -a, -um, <i>known</i> .	is, ea, id, <i>that</i> , plur. <i>those</i> .

VOCABULARY 45.

laudō, 1, <i>I praise</i> .	dō, 1, <i>I give</i> .
culpō, 1, <i>I blame</i> .	arō, 1, <i>I plough</i> .
vulnerō, 1, <i>I wound</i> .	dēlectō, 1, <i>I delight</i> .
vastō, 1, <i>I lay waste</i> .	ornō, 1, <i>I adorn</i> .

NOTE.—The figure 1 placed after a verb means that the word belongs to the first conjugation. For dō see § 56, p. 53.

¹ Be careful to accent this word on o thus, *Rhōdanus*. See p. xii.

² See Voc. 54, note, p. 137.

VOCABULARY 46.

mōnstrō, 1, <i>I point out.</i>	superō, <i>I overcome.</i>
intrō, 1, <i>I enter.</i>	pugnō, 1, <i>I fight.</i>
locus, -i (m.), <i>place.</i>	vestis, -is (f.), <i>garment.</i>
finis, -is (m.), <i>end, boundary.</i>	diligēs, -ntis, <i>diligent.</i>
finēs, -ium (m. plur.), <i>territories.</i>	crās (adv.), <i>to-morrow.</i>

NOTE.—The plural of *locus*, a *place*, is neuter, *loca*, -ōrum, when it means geographical places. The plural *loci* means passages in a book.

VOCABULARY 47.

portō, 1, <i>I carry.</i>	convocō, 1, <i>I call together.</i>
rēgnō, 1, <i>I reign.</i>	habitō, 1, <i>I dwell, live.</i>
vītō, 1, <i>I avoid.</i>	parō, 1, <i>I prepare.</i>
cervus, -i, <i>stag.</i>	crūs, crūris (n.), <i>leg.</i>
strēnuē, <i>vigorously.</i>	iam (adv.), <i>already.</i>
bene, <i>well.</i>	quod (conj.), <i>because.</i>

dō, dare, ded-i, datum, *to give.*

VOCABULARIES 48 AND 49.

festinō, 1, <i>I hasten.</i>	victōria, -ae (f.), <i>victory.</i>
liberō, 1, <i>I set free, I deliver.</i>	praeda, -ae (f.), <i>booty.</i>
nūntiō, 1, <i>I announce.</i>	statua, -ae (f.), <i>statue.</i>
vocō, 1, <i>I call.</i>	māteria, -ae (f.), <i>timber.</i>
convocō, 1, <i>I call together.</i>	domus, -ūs (f.), <i>house.</i>
revocō, 1, <i>I recall.</i>	légātus, -i (m.) <i>ambassador.</i>
aedificō, 1, <i>I build.</i>	contrā (prep. with acc.), <i>against.</i>

NOTES.—(1) *Materia* is also spelled *māteriēs*, fifth declension.

(2) *Domus* is irregular and is thus declined :—

Sing. domus, domum, domūs or domī, domui or domō, domō.

Plur. domūs, domōs or domūs, domōrum or domuum, domibus, domibus.

VOCABULARY 50.

ambulō, 1, <i>I walk.</i>	virgō, -inis (f.), <i>maiden.</i>
explōrātōr, -ōris (m.), <i>spy, scout.</i>	ignāvus, -a, -um, <i>slothful.</i>
parēns, -ntis (o.), <i>parent.</i>	improbis, -a, -um, <i>wicked.</i>

VOCABULARY 51.

habēō, habēre, habu-i, habitum, <i>to have.</i>
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbu-i, dēbitum, <i>to owe.</i>
praebeō, praebe-re, praebu-i, praebitum, <i>to offer, to furnish, give.</i>

timeō, timēre, timu-i (no supine), *to fear*.
 terreō, terrēre, terru-i, territum, *to frighten*.
 coerceō, coercēre, coecru-i, coecritum, *to restrain*.
 doceō, docēre, docu-i, doctum, *to teach*.

auxilium, -i (n.), <i>help</i> .	tolerō, I, <i>to bear</i> .
beneficium, -i (n.), <i>benefit</i> .	pellis, -is (f.), <i>skin</i> .
ira, -ae (f.), <i>anger</i> .	ibi (adv.), <i>there</i> .
asinus, -i (m.), <i>ass</i> .	vix (adv.), <i>scarcely</i> .

VOCABULARY 52.

teneō, tenēre, tenu-i, tentum, *to hold, to keep*.
 dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēv-i, dēlētum, *to destroy*.
 compleō, complēre, complēv-i, complētum, *to fill*.
 fleō, flēre, flēv-i, flētum, *to weep*.

moveō, movēre, mōv-i, mōtum, <i>to move</i> .	
praesidium, -i (n.), <i>garrison, guard</i> .	fossa, -ae (f.), <i>ditch</i> .
firmus, -a, -um, <i>strong</i> .	lapis, -idis (m.), <i>stone</i> .
decimus, -a, -um, <i>tenth</i> .	Graecus, -i (m.), <i>a Greek</i> .
Troia, -ae (f.), <i>Troy</i> .	foedus, -eris (n.), <i>treaty</i> .

VOCABULARY 54.

placeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, <i>to please</i> .	nēmō, <i>no one</i> .
displaceō, 2, ¹ <i>to displease</i> .	pāreō, 2, <i>to obey</i> .
militia, -ae (f.), <i>military affairs</i> , war,	noceō, 2, <i>to injure</i> .
summus, -a, -um, <i>highest</i> .	salūs, -ūtis (f.), <i>safety</i> .
suprēmus, -a, -um, <i>supreme</i> , <i>highest</i> .	iūs, iūris (n.), <i>law, right, power</i> .
	parēns, -entis (c.), <i>parent</i> .

NOTE.—Nēmō (from *ne homō*, i.e., not a man) is thus declined :—

Nom. Nēmō, acc. nēminem, gen. nūllius, dat. nēmini, abl. nūllō.

This is sometimes put in a rhyme :—

From nēmō let me never say.

Nēminis and nēmine.

VOCABULARY 55.

dicō, dicere, dix-i, dictum, *to say, to speak*.
 dūcō, dūcere, dūx-i, ductum, *to lead*.
 tegō, tegere, tēx-i, tēctum, *to cover*.

¹ Verbs with the number 2 are exactly like *moneō* in their principal parts.

legō, legere, lēg-i, lēctum, to read.	
scribō, scribere, scrips-i, scriptum, to write.	
mittō, mittere, mis-i, missum, to send.	
pallium, -i (n.), cloak.	novus, -a, -um, new.
os, ¹ ossis (n.), bone.	pauci, -ae, -a, few.

VOCABULARY 56.

emō, emere, ēm-i, ēmptum, to buy.	
vincō, vincere, vic-i, victum, to conquer.	
claudō, claudere, claus-i, clausum, to close.	
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfend-i, dēfēnsūm, to defend.	
dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscend-i, dēscēnsūm, to descend.	
contendō, contendere, contend-i, contentum, to hasten, to contend.	
cōpia, -ae (f.), plenty, quantity.	iter, itineris (n.), journey, way.
cōpiae, -ārum, forces (soldiers).	ad (prep. with acc.), to.

VOCABULARY 57.

gerō, gerere, gess-i, gestum, to wage, to carry on.	
pōnō, pōnere, posu-i, positum, to place.	
instruō, instruere, instrūx-i, instrūctum, to draw up.	
discō, discere, didic-i, to learn.	
praesidium, -i (n.), guard.	aciēs, -iēi (f.), line of battle.
pōns, pontis (m.), bridge.	ibi (adv.), there.
citerior, ² hither.	cum (prep. with abl.), with.

VOCABULARY 58.

custōdiō, 4, to guard.	cūra, -ae (f.), care.
ērudīō, 4, to train.	scelus, -eris (n.), crime.
finiō, 4, to end.	vitium, -i (n.), vice.
mūniō, 4, to fortify.	vallum, -i (n.), rampart.
pūniō, 4, to punish.	orātiō, -ōnis (f.), speech.

¹ The genitive plural of *os* is *ossium*. *

² In Roman times there were two districts called *Gallia*, viz., *Gallia ulterior*, *Further Gaul* (Modern France), and *Gallia citerior*, *Hither Gaul*, in the north of Italy. For *ulterior* see p. 52; *citerior* comes from a preposition *citrā*, meaning *on this side*. Thus *Gallia citerior* meant the Gaul *on this side*, i.e., on the Roman side, of the Alps.

nūtriō, 4, to nourish.
male (adv.), badly.

mors, -tis (f.), death.
improbis, -a, -um, wicked.

VOCABULARY 59.

veniō, venīre, vēn-i, ventum, to come.
per-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, to arrive.
con-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, to come together, to assemble.
vinciō, vincīre, vīn-x-i, vīnctum, to bind.
sepeliō, sepelīre, sepeliv-i, sepultum, to bury.
statim (adv.), immediately. catēna, -ae (f.), chain.
ante (prep. with acc.), before. labōrō, 1, to work.
post (prep. with acc.), after. occisus, -a, -um, slain.
mēns, -tis (f.), mind. facile (adv.), easily.

VOCABULARY 60.

statuō, statuere, statu-i, statūtum, to decide.

VOCABULARY 61.

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, to persuade.
medicus, -i (m.), doctor.
sānō, 1, to heal.

VOCABULARY 63.

videō, vidēre, vid-i, visum, 2, to see.
relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictum, 3, to leave.
stō, stāre, stet-i, statum, to stand.
Carthāgō, -inis (f.), Carthage. ligneus, -a, -um, wooden.
nārō, 1, to relate. cūrō, 1, to take care of.

VOCABULARIES 64 AND 65.

olim, formerly, once. cantus, -ūs (m.), song.
nunquam, never. contentus, -a, -um, contented.
mox, soon. acūtus, -a, -um, sharp.
hodiē, to-day, now. infēlix, -icis, unhappy.
laetus, -a, -um, glad, joyful. diligēns, -entis, diligent.

VOCABULARY 66. RECAP. VOCS. 45, 50.

cotidiē¹ (adv.), daily. ad (prep. with acc.), to.
mox (adv.), soon. cōpias (f. plur.), see Vocabulary 56.

¹ Also spelled cotidiē and (less correctly) quotidiē.

VOCABULARIES 71 AND 72.

moneō, 2, *I advise.*admoneō, 2, *I warn.*exerceō, 2, *I exercise.*ligneus, -a, -um, *wooden.*Troia, -ae (f.), *Troy.*Troianus, -i, a *Trojan.*armātus, *armed.*classis, -is (f.), *fleet.*lacrima, -ae, *tear, weeping.*Catō, -ōnis, *Cato.*crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*crūdēlitās, -ātis (f.), *cruelty.*tempestās, -ātis (f.), *tempest.*subitus, -a, -um, *sudden.*minae, -ārum (f.), *threats.*

VOCABULARY 74.

opprimo, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *to overpower.*

VOCABULARY 76.

impediō, 4, *to hinder.*occidō, -ere, -idi, -isum, *to slay.*capiō,¹ capere, cēpi, captum, *to take.*gravis, -e, *heavy.*aegrē (adv.), *with difficulty.*oboediō, 4 (with dative), *to obey.*

¹ The conjugation of this verb will be explained later. The only parts used in the exercise follow the usual rules.

GENERAL VOCABULARIES.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH.

ā, ab, *by* (R. 13, p. 29).
 absēns, -ntis, *absent*.
 ācer, -cris, cre, *keen*.
 aciēs, -ēi (f.), *line of battle*.
 acus, -ūs (f.), *needle*.
 acūtus, -a, -um, *sharp*.
 ad (prep. with acc.), *to*.
 admoneō, 2, *I warn*.
 adventus, -ūs (m.), *arrival*.
 adversus, -a, -um, *adverse*.
 aedificō, 1, *I build*.
 aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick*.
 aegrē, *with difficulty*.
 aestās, -ātis (f.), *summer*.
 aetās, -ātis (f.), *age*.
 Africa, -ae (f.), *Africa*.
 ager, -gri (m.), *field*.
 agnus, -i (m.), *lamb*.
 agricola, -ae (m.), *farmer*.
 āla, -ae (f.), *wing*.
 alacer, -cris, -cre, *brisk*.
 albus, -a, -um, *white*.
 Alpēs, -ium (f. plur.), *the Alps*.
 altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*.
 amat, *he loves*.
 ambulō, 1, *I walk*.
 amicus, -i (m.), *friend*.
 amō, 1, *I love*.
 amor, -ōris (m.), *love*.
 animal, -ālis (n.), *animal*.
 animus, -i (m.), *mind, courage*.
 annus, -i (m.), *year*.
 ānser, -eris (m.), *goose*.
 ante (prep. with acc.), *before*.
 antiquus, -a, -um, *old, ancient*.
 aper, -pri (m.), *wild boar*.
 aqua, -ae (f.), *water*.
 aquila, -ae (f.), *eagle*.
 arbor, -oris (f.), *tree*.
 arcus, -ūs (m.), *bow*.

argentum, -i (n.), *silver*.
 arma, -ōrum (n. plur.), *arms*.
 armātus, -a, -um, *armed*.
 arō, 1, *I plough*.
 arx, arcis (f.), *citadel*, § 29 (2), p. 34.
 asinus, -i (m.), *ass*.
 asper, -era, -erum, *rough*.
 audācia, -ae (f.), *boldness*.
 audāx, -ācis, *bold*.
 audiō, 4, *I hear*.
 auris, -is (f.), *ear*.
 aurum, -i (n.), *gold*.
 auxilium, -i (n.), *help*.
 avidus, -a, -um, *greedy*.
 avis, -is (f.), *bird*.
 Belgae, -ārum (m. pl.), *the Belgians*.
 bellum, -i (n.), *war*.
 bene (adv.), *well*.
 beneficium, -i (n.), *benefit*.
 benevolus, -a, -um, *benevolent*.
 bonus, -a, -um, *good*.
 brevis, -e, *short*, brevior, -ius, *shorter*.
 Britannia, -ae (f.), *Britain*.
 calcar, -āris (n.), *spur*.
 campus, -i (m.), *a plain*.
 canis, -is (c.), *dog*.
 cantus, -ūs (m.), *song*.
 capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum, 3, *I take*.
 captivus, -i (m.), *captive*.
 caput, -itis (n.), *head*.
 carmen, -inis (n.), *song*.
 carrus, -i (m.), *cart*.
 Carthāgō, -inis (f.), *Carthage*.
 cārus, -a, -um, *dear*.
 casa, -ae (f.), *cottage*.
 castra, -ōrum (n. plur.), *camp*.
 catēna, -ae (f.), *chain*.

Catō, -ōnis, *Cato*.
 causa, -ae (f.), *cause*.
 causā, *for the sake of*.
 celer, -eris, -ere, *swift*.
 celeritās, -ātis (f.), *speed*.
 cervus, -i (m.), *stag*.
 cibus, -i (m.), *food*.
 citerior, -ius, *hither*.
 civis, -is (c.), *citizen*.
 civitās, -ātis (f.), *state*.
 clam (adv. and prep.), *secretly*.
 clamor, -ōris (m.), *shout*.
 clārus, -a, -um, *famous*.
 classis, -is (f.), *fleet*.
 Claudius, -i, *a man's name*.
 claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum, 3, *I close*.
 coerceō, 2, *I restrain*.
 color, -ōris (m.), *colour*.
 columba, -ae (f.), *dove*.
 comes, -itis (c.), *companion*.
 compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *I fill*.
 complet (-ent), *fills (fill)*.
 consilium, -i (n.), *plan*.
 conspectus, -ūs (m.), *sight, view*.
 constantia, -ae (f.), *constancy*.
 consul, -ulis (m.), *consul*.
 contendō, -ere, -di, -tum, *I hasten, I contend*.
 contentus, -a, -um, *contented*.
 contrā (prep. with acc.), *against*.
 conveniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *I come together, I assemble (intrans.)*.
 convocō, 1, *I call together*.
 cōpia, -ae (f.), *plenty, quantity*.
 cōpiae, -ārum (f. plur.), *forces*.
 cornū, -ūs (n.), *horn, wing of an army*.
 corōna, -ae (f.), *crown*.
 corpus, -oris (n.), *body*.
 cotidiē, *daily*.
 crās (adv.), *to-morrow*.
 crudēlis, -e, *cruel*.
 crudelitās, -ātis (f.), *cruelty*.
 crūs, crūris (n.), *leg*.
 culpō, 1, *I blame*.
 culter, -tri (m.), *knife*.
 eum (prep. with abl.), *with (meaning accompaniment)*.
 sum, *when (R. 61, p. 114)*.

cūr, *why*.
 cūra, -ae (f.), *care*.
 cūrō, 1, *I take care of (with acc.)*.
 currit, *runs*. currunt, *they run*.
 currus, -ūs (m.), *chariot*.
 custodiō, 4, *I guard*.
 custōs, -ōdis (c.), *guardian*.
 dea, -ae (f.), *goddess (§ 1, p. 120)*.
 dēbeō, 2, *I owe, I ought*.
 decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*.
 dēfendō, -ere, -di, -nsum, 3, *I defend*.
 dēlectat, *he delights*.
 dēlectō, 1, *I delight*.
 dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *I destroy*.
 dēns, -ntis (m.), *tooth*.
 dēnsus, -a, -um, *dense*.
 dēscendō, -ere, -di, -scēsum, 3, *I descend*.
 deus, -i (m.), *god (p. 120, § 2 (c))*.
 dexter, -tra, -trum, *right (adj.)*.
 Diāna, -ae (f.), *Diana*.
 dicō, -ere, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I say, I speak*.
 diēs, -ēi (m.), *day*.
 difficilis, -e, *difficult*.
 diligēns, -ntis, *diligent*.
 discō, -ere, didici, 3, *I learn*.
 displiceō, 2, *I displease (with dat.)*.
 dives, divitis, *rich*.
 dō, dare, dedi, datum, *I give*.
 doceō, -ēre, -ui, -ctum, 2, *I teach*.
 dolor, -ōris (m.), *grief*.
 dominus, -i (m.), *lord*.
 domus, -ūs (f.), *house*.
 dōnum, -i (n.), *gift*.
 dūcit (-unt), *leads (lead)*.
 dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ctum, *I lead*.
 dulcis, -e, *sweet*. dulcior, -ius *sweeter*.
 dum, *while*.
 dūrus, -a, -um, *hard*.
 dux, ducis (c.), *leader*.
 dūxit, *he led*.
 ego (§ 48, p. 54).
 eim (§ 48, p. 55).
 emō, -ere, emi, emptum, 3, *I buy*.
 epistola, -ae (f.), *letter*.
 eques, -itis (m.), *horse soldier*.

equester, -ris, -re, *equestrian*.
 equitatus, -ūs (m.), *cavalry*.
 equus, -i (m.), *horse*.
 erat, *he was*.
 ērudīō, 4, *I train*.
 est, *is*.
 et, *and*.
 Eurōpa, -ae (f.), *Europe*.
 exemplum, -i (n.), *example*.
 exerceō, 2, *I exercise*.
 exercitus, -ūs (m.), *army*.
 explorātor, -ōris (m.), *spy, scout*.
 exterior, outer. extrēmus, outermost.

faber, -bri (m.), *workman*.
 faciēs, -i (f.), *face*.
 facile (adv.), *easily*.
 facilis, -e, *easy*.
 facit (-iunt), *makes (make)*.
 factum, -i (n.), *deed*.
 falsus, -a, -um, *false*.
 fēlix, -icis, *happy*.
 fēmina, -ae (f.), *woman*.
 ferōx, -ōcis, *fierce*.
 ferrum, -i (n.), *iron*.
 fertilior, -ius, *more fertile*.
 fertilis, -e, *fertile*.
 ferus, -a, -um, *wild*.
 festinō, 1, *I hasten*.
 fidēlis, -e, *faithful*.
 filia, -ae (f.), *daughter*.
 filius, -i (m.), *son*.
 finēs, -ium (m. plur.), *territories*.
 finīō, 4, *I end*.
 finis, -is (m.), *end, boundary*.
 firmus, -a, -um, *strong*.
 fleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *I weep*.
 flos, -oris (m.), *flower*.
 flūmen, (-inis (n.)), *river*.
 fluvius, -i (m.), *river*.
 foedus, -eris (n.), *treaty*.
 fortis, -e, *brave*. fortior, -ius, *braver*.
 fortuna, -ae (f.), *fortune*.
 fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch*.
 frāter, -tris (m.), *brother*.
 frigidus, -a, -um, *cold (adj.)*.
 frigus, -oris (n.), *cold*.
 fructus, -ūs (m.), *fruit*.
 frumentum, -i (n.), *corn*.
 fuga, -ae (f.), *flight*.
 fulmen, -inis (n.), *lightning*.

Gallia, -ae (f.), *Gaul*.
 Gallus, -i, *a Gaul*.
 gener, -eri (m.), *son-in-law*.
 genū, -ūs (n.), *knee*.
 genus, -eris (n.), *kind, sort*.
 Germānia, -ae (f.), *Germany*.
 gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, 3, *I wage*.
 I carry on.
 gladius, -i (m.), *sword*.
 gradus, -ūs (m.), *step*.
 Graecus, -i (m.), *a Greek*.
 grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing*.
 gravis, -e, *heavy*.
 grex, gregis (m.), *flock*.

habēbat, *he had*.
 habeo, 2, *I have*.
 habitō, 1, *I dwell*.
 Hannibal, -alis (m.), *Hannibal*.
 hasta, -ae (f.), *spear*.
 hiems, -emis (f.), *winter*.
 historia, -ae (f.), *story*.
 hodiē, *to-day, now*.
 homō, -inis (m.), *man*.
 hōra, -ae (f.), *hour*.
 hortus, -i (m.), *garden*.
 hostis, -is (c.), *enemy*.

iam (adv.), *already*.
 ibi (adv.), *there*.
 ignāvus, -a, -um, *slithful*.
 ignis, -is (m.), *fire*.
 ii, § 48, p. 55.
 imāgō, -ginis (f.), *image*.
 imber, -bris (m.), *shower*.
 impediō, 4, *I hinder*.
 imperātor, -ōris (m.), *general*.
 imperō, 1, *I give orders* (§ 66, p. 90).
 impetus, -ūs (m.), *attack*.
 improbus, -a, -um, *wicked*.
 imprūdēs, -entis, *imprudent*.
 incola, -ae (f.), *inhabitant*.
 infelix, -icis, *unhappy*.
 inferior, lower. infāmus, lowest.
 initiū, -i (n.), *beginning*.
 instruō, -ere, -struxi, -strūctum, 3, *I draw up*.
 insula, -ae (f.), *island*.
 interior, inner.

intimus, *inmost*.
 intrō, *I enter*.
 ira, -ae (f.), *anger*.
 iracundus, -a, -um, *angry*.
 is, § 48, p. 55.
 Italia, -ae (f.), *Italy*.
 iter, itineris (n.), *journey*.
 iucundus, -a, -um, *pleasant*.
 iudex, -icis (c.), *judge*.
 iumentum, -ī (n.), *baggage animal*.
 iunior, *younger*.
 iūs, -ūris (n.), *law, right*.
 iustus, -a, -um, *just*.
 iuvenis, -is (c.) (§ 29, p. 34), *young person*.

labor, -ōris (m.), *labour*.
 labōrō, *I work*.
 lacrima, -ae, *tear, weeping*.
 lacus, -ūs (m.), *lake*.
 laetitia, -ae (f.), *joy*.
 laetus, -a, -um, *glad, joyful*.
 lapis, -idis (m.), *stone*.
 lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide*.
 laudō, *I praise*.
 laus, laudis (f.), *praise*.
 lēgātus, -ī (m.), *ambassador*.
 legiō, -ōnis (f.), *legion*.
 legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctum, 3, *I read*.
 leō, -ōnis (m.), *lion*.
 levis, -e, *light, unimportant*.
 lēx, lēgis (f.), *law*.
 liber, -bri (m.), *book*.
 liber, -era, -erum, *free*.
 liberī -ōrum (m. plur.), *children*.
 liberō, *I set free, I deliver*.
 ligneus, -a, -um, *wooden*.
 litus, oris (n.), *shore*.
 locus, -ī (m.), *place*.
 longus, -a, -um, *long*.
 lūna, -ae (f.), *moon*.
 lupus, -ī (m.), *wolf*.
 lūx, lūcis (f.), *light*.

macer, -era, -erum, *thin*.
 magis (adv.), *more*.
 magister, -tri (m.), *master*.
 magnus, -a, -um, *great*.
 maior, -us, *greater*.
 male (adv.), *badly*.
 malum, -ī (n.), *an evil*.

manus, -ūs (f.), *hand*.
 mare, -is (n.), *sea*.
 māter, -tris (f.), *mother*.
 māteria, -ae (f.), *timber*.
 maximē (adv.), *most*.
 maximus, -a, -um, *greatest*.
 medicus, -ī, *doctor*.
 melior, -ius, *better*.
 memor, -oris, *mindful*.
 memoria, -ae (f.), *memory*.
 mēns, -ntis (f.), *mind, intellect*.
 mēnsa, -ae (f.), *table*.
 mēnsis, -is (m.), *month*.
 metus, -ūs (m.), *fear*.
 meus, *my* (§ 50, p. 57).
 miles, militis (m.), *soldier*.
 militia, -ae (f.), *military affairs*.
 minae, -arum (f. pl.), *threats*.
 minimus, -a, -um, *least*.
 minister, -tri (m.), *servant*.
 minor, -us, *less*.
 mirus, -a, -um, *wonderful*.
 miser, -era, -erum, *wretched*.
 mittō, -ere, misi, missum, 3, *I send*.
 mittunt, *they send*.
 molestus, -a, -um, *troublesome*.
 moneō, 2, *I advise*.
 mōns, -ntis (m.), *mountain*.
 mōnstrat, *he points out*.
 mōnstrō, 1, *I point out*.
 mors, -rtis (f.), *death*.
 mortuus, -a, -um, *dead*.
 moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, 2, *I move (trans.)*.
 mox (adv.), *soon*.
 muli-er, -eris (f.), *woman*.
 multus, -a, -um, *much (pl.) many*.
 mūniō, 4, *I fortify*.
 mūrus, -ī (m.), *wall*.

nārrō, 1, *I relate*.
 nātū (§ 45 (2), p. 52).
 nauta, -ae (m.), *sailor*.
 nāvis, -is (f.), *ship*.
 nē (§ 57, p. 65).
 necessārius, -a, -um, *necessary*.
 nēmō, *no one* (see Voc. 54, p. 137).
 Neptūnus, -ī (m.), *Neptune*.
 niger, -gra, -grum, *black*.
 nix, nivis (f.), *snow*.
 noceō, 2, *I injure (with dat.)*.

nōmen, -inis (n.), *name*.
 nōn, *not*.
 nōnnullus, -a, -um, *some*.
 noster, -tra, -trum, *our*.
 nostri, nostrum (R. 24, p. 35).
 nōtus, -a, -um, *known*.
 novus, -a, -um, *new*.
 nox, noctis (f.), [gen. plur., -ium],
night.
 nūbēs, -is (f.), *cloud*.
 numerus, -i (m.), *number*.
 nunc (adv.), *now*.
 nunquam, *never*.
 nūntiō, 1, *I announce*.
 nūntius, -i (m.), *messenger*.
 nūtriō, *I nourish*.
 nux, nucis (f.), *nut*.

oboediō, 4, *I obey* (with dat.).
 obse, obsidis (c.), *hostage*.
 occidō, -ere, -īdi, -isum, 3, *I slay*.
 occisus, -a, -um, *slain*.
 odor, -ōris (m.), *smell*.
 ōlim, *formerly*.
 omnis, -e, *all*.
 oppidum, -i (n.), *town*.
 opprimō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, 3,
I overpower.
 optimus, -a, -um, *best*.
 opus, -eris (n.), *work*.
 ōratiō, -ōnis (f.), *speech*.
 ōrnat, *he adorns*.
 ōrnō, 1, *I adorn*.
 ōrō, 1, *I beg*.
 os, ossis (n.), *bone*.

pallium, -i (n.), *cloak*.
 parat, *prepares*.
 parēns, -ntis (c.), *parent*.
 pareō, 2, *I obey* (with dat.).
 parō, 1, *I prepare*.
 pars, -tis (f.), *part*.
 parvus, -a, -um, *small*.
 pater, -tris (m.), *father*.
 patientia, -ae (f.), *patience*.
 patria, -ae (f.), *fatherland*.
 pauci, -ae, -a, *few*.
 pauper, -eria, *poor*.
 pāx, -ācis (f.), *peace*.
 pecūnia, -ae (f.), *money*.

pedes, -itis (m.), *foot soldier*.
 pedester, -tris, -tre, *pedestrian*.
 peior, -us, *worse*.
 pelagus, -i (n.), *sea*.
 pellis, -is (f.), *skin*.
 periculum, -i (n.), *danger*.
 perniciēs, ēi (f.), *destruction*.
 perniciosus, -a, -um, *destructive*.
 persuādēō, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, 2,
I persuade (with dat.).
 perveniō, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *I*
arrive.
 pēs, pedis (m.), *foot*.
 pessimus, -a, -um, *worst*.
 piscātor, -ōris (m.), *fisherman*.
 piscis, -is (m.), *fish*.
 pius, -a, -um, *dutiful*.
 placeō, 2, *I please* (with dat.).
 plānitēs, -ēi (f.), *plain*.
 plurimi, *most, very many*.
 plurimum (see R. 22, p. 53).
 plūs (see § 43 (2), p. 57).
 poēta, -ae (m.), *poet*.
 pōnō, -ere, posui, positum, 3, *I*
place.
 pōns, -ntis (m.), *bridge*.
 porta, -ae (f.), *gate*.
 portō, 1, *I carry*.
 portus, -ūs (m.), *harbour*.
 post (prep. with acc.), *after*.
 posterior, *later*.
 postremus, *last*.
 potēns, -ntis, *powerful*.
 potentior, -ius, *more powerful*.
 praebeō, 2, *I offer, I furnish, I give*.
 praeda, -ae (f.), *booty*.
 praemium, -i (n.), *reward*.
 praesēns, -ntis, *present* (adj.).
 praesidium, -i (n.), *garrison, guard*.
 primus, -a, -um, *first*.
 princeps, -ipis (m.), *chief*.
 prior, prius, *former*.
 proelium, -i (n.), *battle*.
 propior, *nearer*.
 prosper, -era, -erum, *prosperous*.
 proximus, *nearest, next*.
 prūdēs, -ntis, *prudent*.
 pūblius, -a, -um, *public*.
 puella, -ae (f.), *girl*.
 puer, -eri (m.), *boy*.
 pugna, -ae (f.), *fight*.
 pugnat, *he fights*.

pugnō, 1, *I fight.*

pulcher, -ra, -rum, *beautiful.*

pūniō, 4, *I punish.*

quam, *than* (conj.).

quercus, -ūs (f.), *oak.*

quid P (n.), *what?*

quis P (m.), *who?*

quod (conj.), *because.*

rēgina, -ae (f.), *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis (f.), *region.*

rēgnō, 1, *I reign.*

rēgnum, -i (n.), *kingdom.*

regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctum, 3, *I rule.*

relinquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictum, 3, *I leave.*

rēs, -ei (f.), *thing.*

rēs adversae (f. plur.), *adversity.*

rēspūblica (f.), *the state.*

rēs secundae (f. plur.), *prosperity.*

rēte, -is (n.), *net.*

revocō, 1, *I recall.*

rēx, rēgis (m.), *king.*

Rhēnus, -i, *the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, -i (m.), *the Rhône.*

ripa, -ae (f.), *bank (of a river).*

rogō, 1, *I ask.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman.*

rosa, -ae (f.), *rose.*

ruber, -bra, -brum, *red.*

sacer, -cra, -orum, *sacred.*

saepe, *often.*

sagitta, -ae (f.), *arrow.*

salūber, -bris, -bre, *healthy.*

salūs, -ūtis (f.), *safety.*

sānō, 1, *I heal.*

sapiēns, -ntis, *wise.*

sapientia, -ae (f.), *wisdom.*

scelus, -eris (n.), *crime.*

Scipiō, -ōnis (m.), *Scipio.*

scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, *I write.*

scūtum, -i (n.), *shield.*

sē (§ 48, p. 55).

secundus, -a, -um, *favourable.*

semper, *always.*

senex, senis (m.), *old man.*

senior, *older.*

sepeliō, -īre, -īvi, sepultum, 4, *I bury.*

servus, -i (m.), *slave.*

sī, *if* (R. 40, p. 80).

sidus, -eris (n.), *constellation.*

signifer, -eri (m.), *standard-bearer.*

silva, -ae (f.), *wood.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left* (adj.).

socer, -eri (m.), *father-in-law.*

socius, -i (m.), *an ally.*

sōl, sōlis (m.), *sun.*

solum, -i (n.), *soil.*

soror, -ōris (f.), *sister.*

spēs, -ei (f.), *hope.*

spina, -ae (f.), *thorn.*

statim, (adv.), *immediately.*

statua, -ae (f.), *statue.*

statuō, -ere, statui, statutum, 3, *I decide.*

stella, -ae (f.), *star.*

stō, -āre, steti, statum, *I stand.*

strēnuē, *vigorously.*

stultus, -a, -um, *foolish.*

subitus, -a, -um, *sudden.*

sum, esse, fui, *I am.*

summus, -a, -um, *highest.*

sunt, *they are.*

superat, *overcomes.*

superior, *upper.*

superō, 1, *I overcome.*

supplex, -icis, *suppliant.*

suprēmus, -a, -um, *highest, supreme.*

suus, *his, her, its, their* (R. 28, p. 58).

taurus, -i (m.), *bull.*

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, 3, *I cover.*

tēlum, -i (n.), *weapon, dart.*

tempestās, -ātis (f.), *tempest.*

templum, -i (n.), *temple.*

tempus, -oris (n.), *time.*

teneō, -ēre, -ui, -nūtum, 2, *I hold, keep.*

tener, -era, erum, *tender.*

terra, -ae (f.), *land, earth.*

terreo, 2, *I frighten.*

terret, *he terrifies.*

terrētur, *he is terrified.*

testis, -is (c.), *witness.*

timeō, 2 (no supine), *I fear.*

timet, *he fears.*

timidus, -a, -um, *timid.*

tolerō, 1, *I bear.*

trabs, trabis (f.), *beam.*

trāns (prep. with acc.), *across*.

trānsitus, -ūs (m.), *crossing*.

tristis, -e, *sad*.

Troia, -ae (f.), *Troy*.

Troiānus, -ī, *a Trojan*.

tū (§ 48, p. 54).

tunc, *then*.

turpis, -e, *disgraceful, base*.

turris (f.), *tower*.

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe*.

tuus, -a, -um, *thy*.

ulterior, *further*. ultimus, *last*
(§ 44, p. 52.)

urbs, -is (f.), *city*.

ut (§ 57, p. 65).

ūtilior, -ius, *more useful*.

ūtilis, -e, *useful*.

vadum, -ī (n.), *ford*.

validus, -a, -um, *strong*.

vallum, -ī (n.), *rampart*.

varius, -a, -um, *various*.

vastō, 1, *I lay waste*.

vectigal, -ālis (n.), *tax*.

vēnātor, -ōris (m.), *hunter*.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, 4, *I come*.

ventus, -ī (m.), *wind*.

verbum, -ī (n.), *word*.

vesper, -eris or -erī (m.), *evening*.

vester, -tra, -trum, *your*.

vestis, -is (f.), *garment*.

vetus, old (§ 34a, p. 39; § 42, p. 51).

via, -ae (f.), *way*.

victor, -ōris (m.), *victor*.

victōria, -ae (f.), *victory*.

vicus, -ī (m.), *village*.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, visum, 2, *I see*.

vinciō, -īre, vīxī, vinctum, 4, *I bind*.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, 3, *I conquer*.

vinum, -ī (n.), *wine*.

violēns, -ntis, *violent*.

vir, -ī (m.), *man*.

virgō, -inis (f.), *virgin, maiden*.

vīta, -ae (f.), *life*.

vitium, -ī (n.), *vice*.

vītō, 1, *I avoid*.

vīvit (-unt), *lives (live)*.

vix (adv.), *scarcely*.

vocō, 1, *I call*.

vōx, -ōcis (f.), *voice*.

vulnerat, *he wounds*.

vulnerō, 1, *I wound*.

vulnus, -eris (n.), *wound*.

ulpēs, -is (f.), *fox*.

II. ENGLISH-LATIN.

absent, *absēns*, -ntis.
 across, *trāns* (with acc.).
 adorn, *I, ōrnō*, 1.
 adorns, *he, ōrnat*.
 adverse, *adversus*, -a, -um.
 adversity, *rēs adversae* (f. plur.).
 advise, *I, moneō*. 2 (§ 66, p. 90).
 affairs, military, *militia*, -ae (f.).
 Africa, *Āfrica*, -ae (f.).
 after, *post* (with acc.).
 against, *contrā* (with acc.).
 age, *aetās*, -ātis (f.).
 all, *omnis*, -e.
 ally, *an, socius*, -ī (m.).
 Alps, the, *Alpēs*, -ium (f. plur.).
 already, *iam*.
 always, *semper*.
 am, *I, sum*.
 ambassador, *lēgātus*, -ī (m.).
 ancient, *antiquus*, -a, -um.
 and, *et*.
 anger, *ira*, -ae (f.).
 angry, *iracundus*, -a, -um.
 animal, *animal*, -ālīs (n.).
 announce, *I, nūntiō*, 1.
 are, *sunt*.
 armed, *armātus*, -a, -um.
 arms (weapons), *arma*, -ōrum (n. pl.).
 army, *exercitus*, -ūs (m.).
 arrival, *adventus*, -ūs (m.).
 arrive, *I, perveniō*, -īre, -vērī, -ventum, 4.
 arrow, *sagitta*, -ae (f.).
 ask, *I, rogō*, 1.
 ass, *asinus*, -ī (m.).
 assemble, *I, conveniō*, 4.
 attack, *impetus*, -ūs (m.).
 avoid, *I, vitō*, 1.
 badly, *male*.
 baggage-animal, *iumentum*, -ī (n.).
 bank (river), *rīpa*, -ae (f.).
 base, *turpis*, -e.
 battle, *proelium*, -ī (n.).
 beach, *litus*, -oris (n.).
 beam, *trabs*, -abīs (f.).
 bear, *I, tolerō*, 1.
 beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum.
 because, *quod* (conj.).

before, *ante* (with acc.).
 beg, *I, ōrō*, 1.
 beginning, *initium*, -ī (n.).
 Belgians, the, *Belgae*, -ārum (m. pl.).
 benefit, *beneficium*, -ī (n.).
 benevolent, *benevolus*, -a, -um.
 best, *optimus*. better, *melior*.
 bind, *I, vinciō*, -īre, *vinci*, *vincum*.
 bird, *avis*, -is (f.).
 black, *niger*, -gra, -grum.
 blame, *I, culpō*, 1.
 boar, wild, *aper*, -prī (m.).
 body, *corpus*, -oris (n.).
 bold, *audāx*, -ācis.
 boldness, *audācia*, -ae (f.).
 bone, *os, ossis* (n.).
 book, *liber*, -brī (m.).
 booty, *praeda*, -ae (f.).
 bow, *arcus*, -ūs (m.).
 boy, *puer*, -erī (m.).
 brave, *fortis*, -e.
 bravely, *fortiter*.
 bridge, *pōns*, -ntis (m.).
 Britain, *Britannia*, -ae (f.).
 broad, *lātus*, -a, -um.
 brother, *frāter*, -tris (m.).
 build, *I, aedificō*, 1.
 bull, *taurus*, -ī (m.).
 bury, *I, sepeliō*, -īre, -ivī, *sepultum*, 4.
 buy, *I, emō*, -ere, *ēmī*, *emptum*, 3.
 by, *ā* (R. 13, p. 29); (in time),
 (R. 14, p. 31).

Cæsar, *Cæsar*, -aris (m.).
 call, *I, vocō*, 1. call back, *revocō*.
 call together, *I, convocō*.
 camp, *castra*, -ōrum (n. plur.).
 captive, *captivus*, -ī (m.).
 care, *cūra*, -ae (f.).
 care of, *I take, cūrō*, 1.
 carry, *I, portō*, 1.
 carry on, *I, gerō*, -ere, *gessi*, *gestum*.
 cart, *carrus*, -ī (m.).
 Carthage, *Carthāgō*, -inis (f.).
 Cato, *Catō*, -ōnis (m.).
 cause, *causa*, -ae (f.).
 cavalry, *equitatus*, -ūs (m.).
 chain, *catēna*, -ae (f.).
 chariot, *currus*, -ūs (m.).

chief, *princeps*, -*ipis* (m.).
 children, *liberī*, -*ōrum* (m. plur.).
 citadel, *arx*, -*cis* (f.).
 citizen, *civis*, -*is* (c.).
 city, *urbs*, -*is* (f.).
 Claudius, *Claudius*, -*i* (m.).
 cloak, *pallium*, -*i* (n.).
 close, *claudō*, -*ere*, *clausi*, *clausum*.
 cloud, *nubēs*, -*is* (f.).
 cold, *frigus*, -*oris* (n.).
 cold (adj.), *frigidus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 colour, *color*, -*oris* (m.).
 come, *veniō*, -*ire*, *veni*, *ventum*, 4.
 come together, *conveniō*, 4.
 commonwealth, *rēspūblica* (f.).
 companion, *comes*, -*itis* (c.).
 conquer, *vincō*, -*ere*, *vici*, *victum*, 3.
 conqueror, *victor*, -*oris* (m.).
 constellation, *sidus*, -*eris* (n.).
 consul, *cōsul*, -*ulis* (m.).
 contend, *contendō*, -*ere*, -*dī*, -*tum*, 3.
 contented, *contentus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 corn, *frumentum*, -*i* (n.).
 cottage, *casa*, -*ae* (f.).
 cover, *tegō*, -*ere*, *tēxi*, *tectum*, 3.
 crime, *scelus*, -*eris* (n.).
 crossing, *transitus*, -*ūs* (m.).
 crown, *corōna*, -*ae* (f.).
 cruel, *crudelis*, -*e*.
 cruelty, *crudelitās*, -*ātis* (f.).

daily, *cotidie*.
 danger, *periculum*, -*i* (n.).
 dart, *telum*, -*i* (n.).
 daughter, *filia*, -*ae* (f.).
 day, *diēs*, -*ei* (m.).
 dead, *mortuus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 dear, *cārus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 death, *mors*, -*ris* (f.).
 decide, *statuō*, -*ere*, -*uī*, -*ūtum*, 3.
 deed, *factum*, -*i* (n.).
 defend, *dēfendō*, -*ere*, -*dī*, -*fēsum*, 3.
 delight, *delectō*, 1.
 delights, *he, delectat*.
 deliver, *liberō*.
 dense, *dēnsus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 descend, *dēscendō*, -*ere*, -*dī*, -*scēn-*
sum, 3.
 destroy, *dēlēō*, -*ere*, -*ēvi*, -*ētum*, 2.
 destruction, *perniciēs*, -*ei* (f.).
 destructive, *perniciōsus*, -*a*, -*um*.

Diana, *Diāna*, -*ae* (f.).
 difficult, *difficilis*, -*e*.
 difficulty, with, *aeqr̄*.
 diligent, *diligēns*, -*ntis*.
 disgraceful, *turpis*, -*e*.
 displeasure, *displicēō*, 2 (with dat.).
 ditch, *fossa*, -*ae* (f.).
 doctor, *medicus*, -*i* (m.).
 dog, *canis*, -*is* (c.), § 29, p. 34.
 dove, *columba*, -*ae* (f.).
 draw up, to, *instruō*, -*ere*, -*struxi*,
-strūctum.
 dutiful, *pius*, -*a*, -*um*.
 dwell, *habito*, 1.
 eagle, *aquila*, -*ae* (f.).
 ear, *auris*, -*is* (f.).
 earth, *terra*, -*ae* (f.).
 easily, *facile*.
 easy, *facilis*, -*e*.
 end, *finis*, -*is* (m.).
 end, *finiō*, 4.
 enemy, *hostis*, -*is* (c.).
 enter, *intrō*, 1.
 Europe, *Eurōpa*, -*ae* (f.).
 evening, *vesper*, -*eris* or -*erī* (m.).
 evil, *malum*, -*i* (n.).
 exercise, *exerceō*, 2.
 example, *exemplum*, -*i* (n.).

face, *faciēs*, -*ei* (f.).
 faithful, *fidēlis*, -*e*.
 false, *falsus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 famous, *clārus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 farmer, *agricola*, -*ae* (m.).
 father, *pater*, -*tris* (m.).
 father-in-law, *socer*, -*erī* (m.).
 fatherland, *patria*, -*ae* (f.).
 favourable, *secundus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 fear, *metus*, -*ūs* (m.).
 fear, *timeō*, -*ere*, -*uī* (no supine).
 fears, *he, timei*.
 fertile, *fertilis*, -*e*.
 few, *pauci*, -*ae*, -*a*.
 field, *ager*, -*grī* (m.).
 fierce, *ferōx*, -*ocis*.
 fight, *pugna*, -*ae* (f.).
 fight, *pugnō*, 1.
 fights, *he, pugnat*.
 fill, *impleō*, -*ere*, -*ēvi*, -*ētum*, 2.
 fills, *he, complet*.

finish = end.
 fire, *ignis*, -is (m.).
 first, *primus*, -a, -um.
 fish, *piscis*, -is (m.).
 fisherman, *piscator*, -ōris (m.).
 flight, *fuga*, -ae (f.).
 flock, *grex*, -egis (m.).
 flower, *flōs*, -ōris (m.).
 food, *cibus*, -i (m.).
 foolish, *stultus*, -a, -um.
 foot, *pēs*, *pedis* (m.).
 foot-soldier, *pedes*, *itis* (m.).
 for. See R. 3, p. 4, and 14 (b), p. 35.
 forces, *cōpiae* (f. plur.).
 ford, *vadum*, -i (n.).
 former, *prior*, *prius*.
 formerly, *olim*.
 fortify, *I*, *mūniō*, 4.
 fortune, *fortūna*, -ae (f.).
 fox, *vulpēs*, -is (f.).
 free, *liber*, -era, -erum.
 friend, *amicus*, -i (m.).
 frighten, *I*, *terreō*, 2.
 fruit, *fructus*, -ūs (m.).
 further, *ulterior*, *ius*.
 garden, *hortus*, -i (m.).
 garment, *vestis*, -is (f.).
 garrison, *praesidium*, -i (n.).
 gate, *porta*, -ae (f.).
 Gaul, *a*, *Gallus*, -i (m.).
 Gaul, *Gallia*, -ae (f.).
 general, *imperātor*, -ōris (m.).
 German, *Germānus*, -a, -um.
 Germany, *Germānia*, -ae (f.).
 gift, *dōnum*, -i (n.).
 girl, *puella*, -ae (f.).
 give, *I*, *dō*, *dare*, *dedi*, *datum*.
 gives, *he*, *dat*.
 glad, *laetus*, -a, -um.
 god, *deus*, -i (m.).
 goddess, *dea*, -ae (f.).
 gold, *aurum*, -i (n.).
 good, *bonus*, -a, -um.
 goose, *ānser*, -eris (m.).
 great, *magnus*, -a, -um.
 greater, *maior*, -us.
 greatest, *maximus*, -a, -um.
 greedy, *avidus*, -a, -um.
 Greek, *a*, *Græcus*, -i (m.).
 guard, *praesidium*, -i (n.).

guard, *I*, *custōdiō*, 4.
 guardian, *custōs*, -ōdis (c.).
 had, *he* (= possessed), *habēbat*; translate the pluperf. (§ 55, p. 63).
 hand, *manus*, -ūs (f.).
 Hannibal, *Hannibal*, -alis (m.).
 happy, *fēlix*, -icis.
 harbour, *portus*, -ūs (m.).
 hard, *dūrus*, -a, -um.
 has, *he*, *habet*.
 hasten, *I*, *contendō*, -ere, -dī, -tum.
 hasten, *I*, *festinō*, 1.
 have, *I*, *habeō*, 2.
 he, *is*.
 head, *caput*, -itīs (n.).
 heal, *I*, *sānō*, 1.
 healthy, *salūber*, -bris, -bre.
 hear, *I*, *audiō*, 4.
 heat, *calor*, -ōris (m.).
 heavy, *gravis*, -e.
 help, *auxilium*, -i (n.).
 her, *eam* (pro.) (R. 26, p. 56), *eui* (adj.).
 herself, *sē*.
 high, *altus*, -a, -um.
 highest, *summus*, -a, -um.
 him, *eum*. himself, *a*.
 hinder, *I*, *impediō*, 4.
 his, *suus*, -a, -um (R. 28, p. 58).
 hither (adj.), *citerior*, -ius.
 hold, *I*, *teneo*, -ere, -ui, -ntum, 2.
 honour, *honor*, -ōris (m.).
 hope, *spēs*, -ei (f.).
 horn, *cornū*, -ūs (n.).
 horse, *equus*, -i (m.).
 horseman, *eques*, *equitis* (m.).
 horse soldier, *eques*, -itīs (m.).
 hostage, *obses*, *obsidis* (c.).
 hour, *hōra*, -ae (f.).
 house, *domus*, -ūs (f.) (see Voc. 4 n. 2, p. 136).
 hunter, *vēnātor*, -ōris (m.).
 husbandman, *agricola*, -ae (m.).
 I, *ego*.
 if, *si* (R. 40, p. 80).
 immediately, *statim*.
 imprudent, *imprudēns*, -ntis.
 in, *in* (R. 7, p. 12), see R. 14, p. 3.
 inhabitant, *incola*, -ae (m.).
 injure, *I*, *noceō*, 2 (with dative).

inmost, *intimus*.

inner, *interior*.

iron, *ferrum*, -i (n.).

is, *est*.

island, *insula*, -ae (f.).

Italy, *Italia*, -ae (f.).

itself, *se*.

journey, *iter*, *itineris* (n.).

joy, *lactitia*, -ae (f.).

joyful, *laetus*, -a, -um.

judge, *iudex*, -icis (c.).

just, *iustus*, -a, -um.

keen, *acer*, *acris*, *acre*.

keep, I, *teneō*, -ēre, -uī, -ntum, 2.

kind, sort, genus, *genus*, -eris (n.).

kind (adj.), *benignus*, -a, -um.

king, *rex*, *rēgis* (m.).

kingdom, *rēgnum*, -i (n.).

knee, *genū*, -ūs (n.).

knife, *culter*, -trī (m.).

known, *nōtus*, -a, -um.

labour, *labor*, -ōris (m.).

lake, *lacus*, -ūs (m.).

lamb, *agnus*, -i (m.).

land, *terra*, -ae (f.); *patria*, -ae (f.),
= native land.

large, *magnus*, -a, -um.

last, see § 44, p. 52.

law, *lēx*, *lēgis* (f.).

lay waste, I, *vastō*, 1.

lead, I, *dūcō*, -ere, -xī, -ctum, 3.

lead, they, *dūcunt*.

leader, *dux*, *ducis* (c.).

leads, he, *dūcit*.

learn, I, *discō*, -ere, *didicī* (no
supine), 3.

least, *minimus*, -a, -um.

leave, I, *relinquō*, -ere, -liquī, -lic-
tum, 3.

led, he, *dūxit*.

left, *sinister*, -tra, -trum.

leg, *crūs*, -ūris (n.).

legion, *legiō*, -ōnis (f.).

less, *minor*, -us.

lest, *nē*.

letter, *epistola*, -ae (f.).

life, *vita*, -ae (f.).

light, *lux*, -icis (f.).

light (adj.), *levis*, -e.

lightning, *fulmen*, -inis (n.).

like = love.

line (of battle), *aciēs*, -ē (f.).

lion, *leō*, -ōnis (m.).

little, *parvus*, -a, -um.

live, I, *habitō*, 1.

lives, he, *vivit*. live, they, *vivunt*.

long, *longus*, -a, -um.

lord, *dominus*, -i (m.).

love, *amor*, -ōris (m.).

love, I, *amō*, 1.

loves, he, *amat*.

lower, *inferior*, -ius.

lowest, *infimus*, -imus.

maiden, *virgō*, *inis* (f.).

make, they, *faciunt*.

makes, he, *facit*.

man, *vir*, *virī* (m.).

man (human being), *homō*, -inis

(m.) (see R. 15, p. 41).

many, *multī*, -ae, -a.

master, *dominus*, -i (m.); *magister*,

trī (m.) = teacher.

me, *mē*.

memory, *memoria*, -ae (f.).

messenger, *nūntius*, -ī (m.).

mid-day, *meridies*, -ē (m.).

mind, *mēns*, -nis (f.).

mind, *animus*, -i (m.).

mindful, *memor*, -oris.

money, *pecūnia*, -ae (f.).

month, *mēnsis*, -is (m.).

moon, *lūna*, -ae (f.).

more (1) (to transl. comp. degree),

R. 19, p. 49; (2) (quantity), R.

22, p. 53.

more (quantity), *plūs* (R. 22, p. 53).

more (degree), *magis* (§ 47, p. 52).

most (quantity), *plūrimum*, *plū-*

rimū (R. 22, p. 53).

most (degree), *maximē* (§ 47, p. 52).

mother, *māter*, -tris (f.).

mountain, *mōns*, -nis (m.).

move, I, *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtum*, 2.

much, *multum* (R. 22, p. 53).

my, *meus*, -a, -um.

name, *nōmen*, -inis (n.).

nation, *gēns*, *gentis* (f.).

native land, *patria*, -ae (f.).

nearer, *propior*, -ius.

nearest, *proximus*, -a, -um.
 necessary, *necessarius*, -a, -um.
 needle, *acus*, -ūs (f.).
 Neptune, *Neptūnus*, -ī (m.).
 net, *rēte*, -is (n.).
 never, *nunquam*.
 new, *novus*, -a, -um.
 next, *proximus*, -a, -um.
 night, *nox*, -ctis (f.).
 noble, *nōbilis*, -e.
 noise, *clāmor*, -ōris (m.).
 no one, *nēmō* (see Voc. 54, p. 137).
 not, *nōn*.
 nourish, *I, nūtrīō*, 4.
 now, *nunc*.
 number, *numerus*, -ī (m.).
 aut, *nuz*, -ucis (f.).
 oak, *quercus*, -ūs (f.).
 obey, *I, pāreō*, 2 (with dat.).
 offer, *I, praebeō*, 2.
 often, *saepe*.
 old, *vetus*, -eris.
 old, ancient, *antīquus*, -a, -um.
 old man, *senex*, *senis* (m.).
 older, *senior*.
 oldest, *veterrimus*, -a, -um.
 oldest, *nātū maximus*.
 once (formerly), *olim*.
 order, *I, imperō*, 1 (§ 66, p. 90).
 orders, *I give, imperō*, 1 (§ 66, p. 90) (with dat.).
 our, *noster*, -tra, -trum.
 out of, *ē, ex* (with abl.).
 outer, exterior, outermost, *extrēmus*.
 over, *trans* (with acc.).
 overcomes, *I, superō*, 1.
 overcomes, he, *superat*.
 overpower, *I, opprimō*, -ere, -essi, -essum, 3.
 owe, *I, dēbeō*, 2.
 parent, *parēs*, -ntis (c.).
 part, *pars*, -rtis (f.).
 patience, *patientia*, -ae (f.).
 peace, *pāx*, -ācis (f.).
 persuade, *I, persuādeō*, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, 2 (with dative).
 place, *I, ponō*, -ere, posuī, positum, 3.
 place, *locus*, -ī (m.).
 plain, *plānitēs*, -ēs (f.).
 plan, *cōsiliū*, -ī (n.).

pleasant, *iucundus*, -a, -um.
 please, *I, placeō*, 2 (with dat.).
 pleasing, *grātus*, -a, -um.
 plenty, *cōpia*, -ae (f.).
 plough, *I, arō*, 1.
 poet, *poēta*, -ae (m.).
 point out, *I, mōnstrō*, 1.
 poor, *pauper*, -eris.
 powerful, *potēns*, -ntis.
 praise, *I, laudō*, 1.
 praise, *laus*, *laudis* (f.).
 praises, he, *laudat*.
 prepare, *I, parō*. prepares, he, *parat*.
 present (adj.), *praesēns*, -ntis.
 prey, *praeda*, -ae (f.).
 prisoner, *captīvus*, -ī (m.).
 prosperity, *rēs secundae* (f. plur.).
 prosperous, *prosper*, -era, -erum.
 prudent, *prūdēs*, -ntis.
 public, *pūblicus*, -a, -um.
 punish, *I, pūniō*, 4.
 pupil, *discipulus*, -ī (m.).
 quantity = plenty.
 queen, *rēgina*, -ae (f.).
 rampart, *vallum*, -ī (n.).
 rather (see R. 20 (a), p. 50).
 ravage, *I, vastō*, 1.
 read, *I, legō*, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, 3.
 recall, *I, revocō*, 1.
 red, *ruber*, -bra, -brum.
 region, *regiō*, -ōnis (f.).
 reign, *I, rēgnō*, 1.
 relate, *I, narrō*, 1.
 restrain, *I, coerceō*, 2.
 reward, *praemium*, -ī (n.).
 Rhine, *Rhēnus*, -ī.
 Rhône, *Rhodanus*, -ī (m.).
 rich, *dives*, *divitis*.
 right (noun) = law, *iūs*, *iūris* (n.).
 right (adj. as opposed to left),
dexter, -tra, -trum.
 river, *fluvius*, -ī (m.).
 Roman, *a, Rōmānus*, -ī (m.).
 rose, *rosa*, -ae (f.).
 rough, *asper*, -era, -erum.
 rule, *I, regō*, 3.
 run, they, *currunt*. runs, he, *currit*.
 sacred, *sacer*, -era, -erum.
 sad, *tristis*, -e.

safe, *tutus*, -a, -um.
 safety, *salus*, -*utis* (f.).
 sailor, *nauta*, -ae (m.).
 savage, *ferus*, -a, -um.
 say, I, *dico*, -ere, -xi, -ctum, 3.
 scarcely, *vix* (adv.).
 Scipio, *Scipiō*, -*ōnis* (m.).
 sea, *mare*, -is (n.); *pelagus*, -i (n).
 see, I, *videō*, -ere, *vidi*, *visum*, 2.
 sees, he, *videt*.
 send, I, *mittō*, -ere, *misi*, *missum*, 3.
 sends, he, *mittit*.
 servant, *minister*, -*trī* (m.).
 set, I (an example), *praebeō*, 2; *dō*.
 set free, I, *liberō*, 1.
 sharp, *acutus*, -a, -um.
 she, *ea*.
 shepherd, *pāstor*, -*ōris* (m.).
 shield, *scutum*, -i (n.).
 ship, *nāvis*, -is (f.).
 shore, *litus*, -*oris* (n.).
 short, *brevis*, -e.
 shout, a, *clāmor*, -*ōris* (m.).
 show, I, *mōstrō*, 1.
 shower, *imber*, -*bris* (m.).
 shows, he, *mōstrat*.
 shut, see close.
 sick, *aeger*, -*gra*, -*grum*.
 sight (view), *cōspectus*, -*ūs* (m.).
 silver, *argentum*, -i (n.).
 sister, *soror*, -*ōris* (f.).
 skin, *pellis*, -is (f.).
 slain, *occisus*, -a, -um.
 slave, *servus*, -i (m.).
 slay, I, *occidō*, -ere, -*idi*, -*isum*, 3.
 slothful, *ignāvus*, -a, -um.
 small, *parvus*, -a, -um.
 smell, *odor*, -*ōris* (m.).
 snow, *nix*, *nivis* (f.).
 soil, *solum*, -i (n.).
 soldier, *miles*, -*itis* (m.).
 some, *nōnnullus*, -a, -um.
 sometimes, *interdum*.
 son, *filius*, -i (m.).
 son-in-law, *gener*, -*erī* (m.).
 song, *cantus*, -*ūs* (m.); *carmen*, -*inis* (n.).
 soon, *mox*.
 sort, *genus*, -*eris* (n.).
 spear, *hasta*, -ae (f.).
 speech, *orātiō*, -*ōnis* (f.).

speed, *celeritās*, -*ātis* (f.).
 spur, *calcar*, -*āris* (n.).
 spy, *explorātor*, -*ōris* (m.).
 stag, *cervus*, -i (m.).
 stand, I, *stō*, -ere, *steti*, *statum*, 1.
 standard-bearer, *signifer*, -*erī* (m.).
 star, *stella*, -ae (f.).
 state, *civitas*, -*ātis* (f.).
 state, the, *rēspūblica*, (f.).
 statue, *statua*, -ae (f.).
 step, *gradus*, -*ūs* (m.).
 stone, *lapis*, -*idis* (m.).
 storm, I, *expugnō*, 1.
 story, *historia*, -ae (f.).
 strong, *validus*, -a, -um; *firmus*.
 sudden, *subitus*, -a, -um.
 summer, *aestās*, -*ātis* (f.).
 sun, *sōl*, *sōlis* (m.).
 supreme, *supremus*, -a, -um.
 sweet, *dulcis*, -e.
 swift, *celer*, -*eris*, -ere.
 sword, *gladius*, -i (m.).

table, *mēsa*, -ae (f.).
 take, I, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpi*, *captum*, 3.
 take care of, I, *cūrō* (with acc.).
 tax, *vectigal*, -*ālīs* (n.).
 teach, I, *doceō*, -ere, -*ui*, -*ctum*, 2.
 tear, *lacrima*, -ae (f.).
 tempest, *tempestās*, -*ātis* (f.).
 temple, *templum*, -i (n.).
 tender, *tener*, -era, -erum.
 tenth, *decimus*, -a, -um.
 terrified, he is, *terrētur*.
 terrifies, he, *terret*.
 terrify, I, *terreō*, 2.
 territories, *finēs*, -*ium* (m. pl.).
 than, *quam*.
 that (adj.), *is*, *ea*, *id*.
 that (so that), *ut*.
 that . . . not, *nē*.
 thee, *tē*.
 their, *eius* (R. 28, p. 58).
 them, *eōs*, *eās*, *ea*.
 themselves, *se*.
 then, *tunc*.
 there, *ibi* (adj.) (see R. 12, p. 27).
 they, *ei*, *eae*, *ea* (§ 48, p. 55).
 thin, *macer*, -era, -erum.
 thing, *rēs*, -*eī* (f.) (see also R. 15 (b), p. 41).

thorn, *spīna*, -ae (f.).
 those (adj. or pro.), *īi*, *cae*, *ea*.
 thou, *tū*.
 threats, *minae*, -ārum (f. pl.).
 thy, *tuus*, -a, -um.
 timber, *māteria*, -ae (f.).
 time, *tempus*, -oris (n.).
 timid, *timidus*, -a, -um.
 to, *ad* (with acc.).
 to-day, *hodiē*.
 to-morrow, *crās* (adv.).
 too (see R. 20 (a), p. 50).
 tooth, *dēns*, -ntis (m.).
 tower, *turris*, -is (f.).
 town, *oppidum*, -ī (n.).
 train, *l.*, *ērudiō*, 4.
 treaty, *foedus*, -eris (n.).
 tree, *arbor*, -oris (f.).
 Trojan, a, *Troianus*, -ī (m.).
 troublesome, *molestus*, -a, -um.
 Troy, *Troia*, -ae (f.).

unfavourable, *adversus*, -a, -um.
 unhappy, *infēlix*, -icis.
 unimportant, *levis*, -e.
 unless, *nisi* (R. 40, p. 80).
 upper, *superior*, -ius.
 us, *nōs*.
 useful, *ūtilis*, -e.

valley, *vallis*, -is (f.).
 valour, *virtūs*, -ūtis (f.).
 various, *varius*, -a, -um.
 very (see R. 20 (b), p. 50).
 very many (R. 20 (b), p. 50), *plūrimī*.
 vice, *vitium*, -ī (n.).
 victor, *victor*, -ōris (m.).
 victory, *victōria*, -ae (f.).
 vigorously, *strēnuē*.
 village, *vicus*, -ī (m.).
 violent, *violēns*, -ntis.
 virgin, *virgō*, -inis (f.).
 virtue, *virtūs*, -ūtis (f.).
 voice, *vōx*, *vōcis* (f.).

wage, *l.*, *gerō*, -ere, *gessi*, *gestum*, 3.
 walk, *l.*, *ambulō*, 1.
 wall, *mūrus*, -ī (m.).
 war, *bellum*, -ī (n.).
 warn, *l.*, *admoneō*, 2.
 was, *he*, *erat*.

water, *aqua*, -ae (f.).
 way, *vis*, -ae (f.).
 we, *nōs*.
 weapon, *tēlum*, -ī (n.).
 weep, *l.*, *fleō*, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, 2.
 well, *bene* (adv.).
 were, *they*, *erant*.
 what P. *quid* ? (n.).
 which P. (pron.) *quis* ? (m.).
 while, *dum*.
 white, *albus*, -a, -um.
 who P. *quis* ? (m.).
 why, *cūr*.
 wicked, *improbus*, -a, -um.
 wide, *lātus*, -a, -um.
 wild, *ferus*, -a, -um.
 wind, *ventus*, -ī (m.).
 wine, *vīnum*, -ī (n.).
 wing, *ālā*, *ae* (f.); (of army), *cornū*, -ūs (n.).
 winter, *hiems*, -emis (f.).
 wisdom, *sapientia*, -ae (f.).
 wise, *sapiēns*, -ntis.
 with, *cum* (with ablative).
 witness, *testis*, -is (c.).
 wolf, *lupus*, -ī (m.).
 woman, *mulier*, -eris (f.), *fēmina*, -ae (f.) (= female).
 wood, *silva*, -ae (f.) (= forest); *māteria* (f.) (= timber).
 wooden, *ligneus*, -a, -um.
 word, *verbum*, -ī (n.).
 work, *opus*, -eris (n.).
 work, *l.*, *labōrō*, 1.
 workman, *faber*, -brī (m.).
 worse, *peior*. worst, *peccimus*.
 worthless, *nēquam* (indecl.).
 wound, a, *vulnus*, -eris (n.).
 wound, *l.*, *vulnerō*, 1.
 wounds, *he*, *vulnerat*.
 wretched, *miser*, -era, -erum.
 write, *l.*, *scribō*, -ere, *scripsi*, *scriptum*, 3.
 year, *annus*, -ī (m.).
 you, *vōs*.
 young person, *iuuenis*, -is (c.). § 29, p. 34.
 younger, *iūnior*.
 youngest, *nātū minimus*.
 your, *vester*, -tra, -trum.

LONGMANS' LATIN COURSE.

With Copious Exercises and Vocabularies.

Crown 8vo.

NEW EDITION, REVISED BY J. W. BARTRAM, M.A.

LATIN COURSE: GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES— PART I.

Up to and Including the Regular Verb, Active and
Passive. 2s.

A KEY for the use of Teachers only. 3s. 10d. net.

LATIN COURSE: GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES— PART II.

Including Pronouns, Numeral Adjectives, Irregular Verbs,
Accusative and Infinitive, Ablative, Absolute, De-
pendent Questions, Dependent Clauses, the Use of
the Cases and Oratio Obliqua. 3s. 6d.

A KEY for the use of Teachers only. 5s. 4d. net.

LATIN COURSE: GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES.

Complete in one volume. 5s.

A KEY for the use of Teachers only. 7s. 10d. net.

LATIN COURSE—PART III.

Elementary Latin Prose, with Complete Syntax and
Passages for Learning by Heart. By W. HORTON
SPRAGGE, M.A. Crown 8vo, 4s. 6d.

A KEY for the use of Teachers only. 3s. 10d. net.

ELEMENTARY LATIN UNSEENS.

With Notes and Vocabularies. Crown 8vo, 2s.

A KEY for use of Teachers only. 4s. 10d. net.

A JUNIOR LATIN READER.

Compiled by P. M. DRUCE, M.A., and M. D. MANDUELL,
M.A. With 38 Maps and Illustrations. Crown 8vo,
3s. 6d.

A SENIOR LATIN READER.

Compiled by J. LANG, B.A. With 82 Illustrations, Maps,
and Plans. Crown 8vo, 4s.